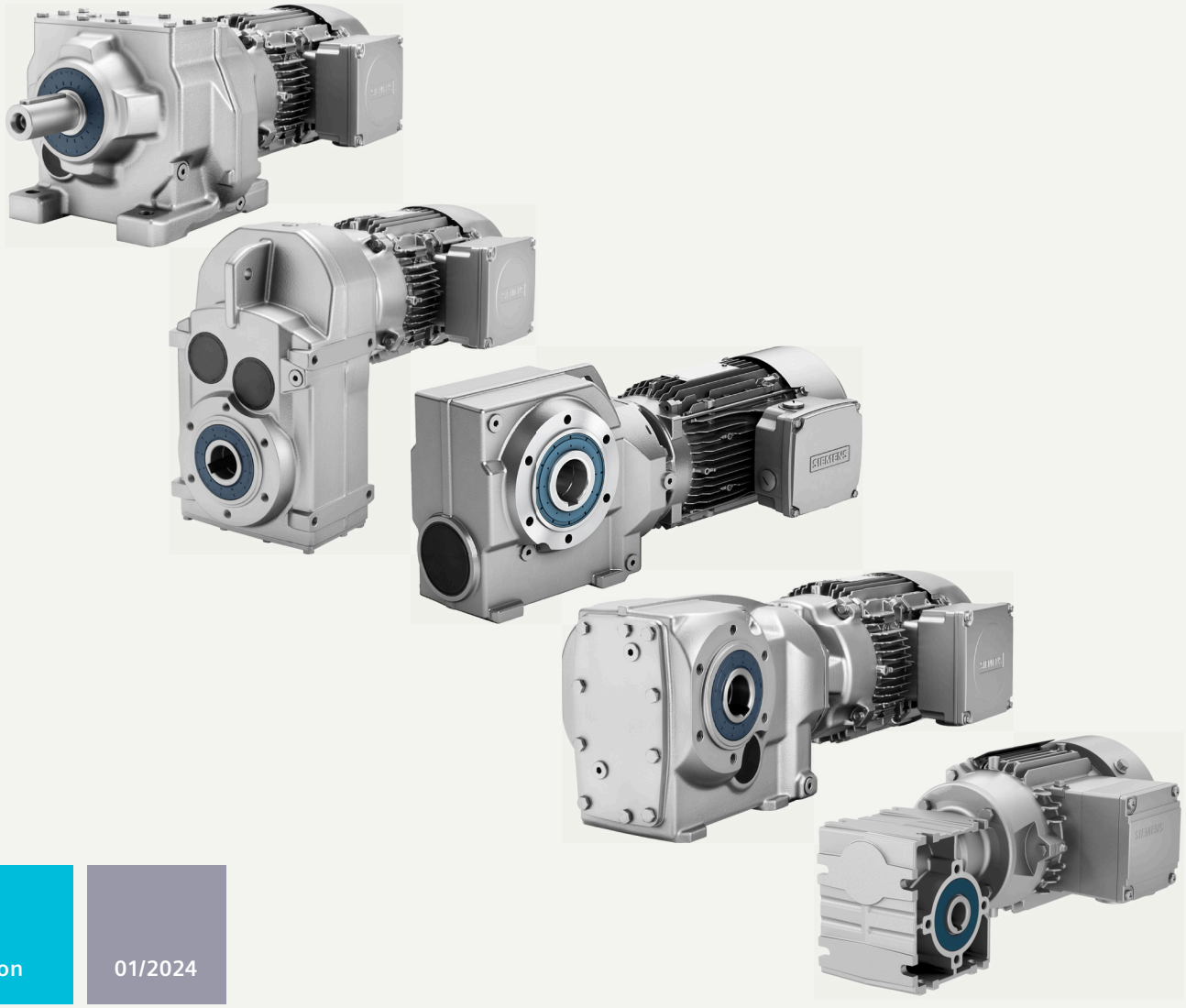
SIEMENS



Edition 01/2024

ORIGINAL MOUNTING AND OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

# SIMOGEAR

## Gearbox

2030 - E, D, Z, FD, FZ, B, K, C, S

www.siemens.com/simogear

SIEMENS

# Geared motors
# SIMOGEAR gearboxes - E, D, Z, FD, FZ, B, K, C, S

Operating Instructions




Translation of the original instructions
01/2024
A5E53220817A/RS-AA

## Legal information

### Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

| ⚠ **DANGER** |
| --- |
| indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken. |

| ⚠ **WARNING** |
| --- |
| indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken. |

| ⚠ **CAUTION** |
| --- |
| indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken. |

| **NOTICE** |
| --- |
| indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken. |

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

### Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

### Proper use of Innomotics products

Note the following:

| ⚠ **WARNING** |
| --- |
| Innomotics products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Innomotics. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed. |

### Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Innomotics GmbH. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

### Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Innomotics GmbH
Vogelweiherstr. 1-15
90441 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E53220817A/RS-AA
Ⓟ 11/2023 Subject to change

Copyright © Innomotics 2024.
All rights reserved

# Table of contents

# Introduction 1

**Note**

The following pages contain the Siemens logo and the Siemens legal information.

Please note that since July 1st, 2023 the Siemens Businesses **Large Drives Applications** and **Low Voltage Motors** are part of **Innomotics GmbH**, Germany.

All rights to and product information on the following pages have been transferred from Siemens to Innomotics.

The re-branding of the document will take place in due course.

## 1.1 About SIMOGEAR

### Description

SIMOGEAR is the Siemens product family of geared motors in Digital Industry.

## 1.2 Sales legislation

Typical use cases are listed in this product documentation and in the online help to illustrate possible application areas for our products. These are purely exemplary and do not constitute a statement relating to the suitability of the respective product for use in specific individual cases. Unless explicitly agreed as part of a contract, Siemens assumes no liability relating to such suitability. Suitability for a particular application in specific individual cases must be assessed by the user on a case-for-case basis, taking into account all technical, legal and other requirements. Always observe the descriptions of the technical features and the relevant constraints of the respective product provided in the product documentation.

# 1.3 About this manual

## 1.3.1 Content

### Description

These operating instructions provide you with information about the geared motors and their associated components. You will learn about safely and professionally handling the geared motors – from the initial delivery up to final disposal:

- Transporting and storing
- Setup and mounting
- Connecting
- Commissioning
- Testing
- Operating
- Searching for and eliminating faults
- Disassembly
- Disposal

### Keeping the documentation in a safe place

This documentation should be kept in a location where it can be accessed. Make the documentation available to the personnel that have been deployed.

### Description

This documentation includes recommendations relating to third-party products. Siemens is aware of the fundamental suitability of these third-party products. You can use equivalent products from other manufacturers.

Siemens does not accept any warranty when using third-party products.

## 1.3.2 Target group

### Description

These operating instructions address all personnel who work on a geared motor or use a geared motor.

### 1.3.3 Preventing hazards

The safety instructions provided in these operating instructions are intended to avoid personal injury and material damage. They also guarantee the function and a long service life of the geared motors.

- Read these operating instructions before handling the geared motors.
- Always follow the safety instructions and notices in these operating instructions.

The warning note concept is explained at the beginning of this documentation.

### 1.3.4 What is new in BA_2030_0523?

#### Main changes in this edition

**Revisions**

- Address changed from Siemens AG to Innomotics GmbH
- Front covers U1 and U4 adapted
- Chapter Rating plate data adapted-> Rating plate data (Page 123)
- Chapter Declaration of incorporation of partly completed machinery, Declaration of Conformity adapted -> Declaration of incorporation of partly completed machinery, Declaration of Conformity (Page 205)

### 1.3.5 Standard scope

#### Description

This documentation describes the functionality of the standard scope. This scope may differ from the scope of the functionality of the system that is actually supplied. The functions of the system delivered can only be found in the order documents.

Additional functions may be able to be executed in the system, which are not explained in this documentation. However, these functions cannot be claimed in the case of a new delivery or service.

This documentation does not contain all detailed information on all product types. Furthermore, this documentation cannot take into consideration every conceivable type of installation, operation and service/maintenance.

The machine manufacturer must document any additions or modifications made to the product.

### 1.3.6 Websites of third-party companies

#### Description

This document may contain hyperlinks to third-party websites. Siemens is not responsible for and shall not be liable for these websites and their content. Siemens does not check the information that appears on these websites and is not responsible for the content and information provided there. The user bears the full risk when visiting these websites.

## 1.4 SIMOGEAR documentation

#### Description

Comprehensive documentation on SIMOTICS, SIMOGEAR and on the SINAMICS converter family are provided in Internet (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/ps/13204/man).

You can display documents or download them in the PDF and HTML5 format.

The documentation is divided into the following categories:

Table 1-1 SIMOTICS / SIMOGEAR / SINAMICS documentation

| Information | Documentation class[1)] | Content | Target group |
|---|---|---|---|
| General information | Configuration Manual | Rules, guidelines and tools for configuring products, systems, and plants. Further: Information about the operating and ambient conditions for hardware and software, the use of functions, as well as about circuit diagrams and terminal diagrams and the installation of software assuming that this is necessary for commissioning. | Planners, application engineers |
| Device information | Installation Instructions | All relevant information on setting up, installing and cabling as well as the required dimension drawings and circuit diagrams | Installation personnel, commissioning engineers, service and maintenance personnel |

| Information | Documentation class[1)] | Content | Target group |
|---|---|---|---|
| Basic information | Operating instructions | Comprehensive collection of all information necessary for the safe operation of products, plant/system parts and complete plants (IEC 82079) | Machine operators, plant operators |
| | Compact instructions | Essential contents of the operating instructions in abbreviated and compressed form | Machine operators, plant operators |
| | Product Information | Information that only becomes known shortly before or even after start of delivery and is therefore not included in the associated user documentation | Planners, configuration engineers, technologists, installation personnel, constructors; commissioning engineers, machine operators, programmers, service and maintenance personnel |
| | Online help | Instructions for configuring, programming and commissioning | Application engineers, programmers, commissioning engineers |

[1)] Not all documentation classes are available for every SIMOTICS / SIMOGEAR / SINAMICS product.

## 1.5 Documentation on the Internet

The manuals for the motors, gearboxes and geared motors are available here: SIOS web site (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/13424/man)

## 1.6 Service and support

### 1.6.1 Siemens Industry Online Support on the Web

#### Description

The following is available via Siemens Industry Online Support (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/), among others:

- Product support
- Global forum for information and best practice sharing between users and specialists
- Local contact persons via the contact person database (→ Contact)
- Information about field services, repairs, spare parts, and much more (→ Services)
- Search for product info

- Important topics at a glance
- FAQs (frequently asked questions)
- Application examples
- Manuals
- Downloads
- Compatibility tool
- Newsletters with information about your products
- Catalogs/brochures

### 1.6.2 Spare parts services

**Description**

The online spare part service "Spares on Web" offers certain spare parts for the product:

- Website: SOW address (https://www.sow.siemens.com/?lang=en).

## 1.7 Important product information

### 1.7.1 Intended use

**Ex-version gearboxes**

The Ex gearbox fulfills the requirements of the Explosion Protection Directive 2014/34/EU and the UK Directive UK SI 2016:1107.

In the case of Ex-version gearboxes, observe the instructions marked with this symbol.

| Designation of the gearbox | | Use in zones with explosive gases, Zone: | Gas group of combustible liquid | Temperature Class of combustible liquid |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | II 2G Ex h IIB T4 Gb | 1, 2 | IIA, IIB | T1 - T4 |
|  | II 2G Ex h IIC T4 Gb | 1, 2 | IIA, IIB, IIC | T1 - T4 |
|  | II 3G Ex h IIB T4 Gc | 2 | IIA, IIB | T1 - T4 |
|  | II 3G Ex h IIC T4 Gc | 2 | IIA, IIB, IIC | T1 - T4 |

| Designation of the gearbox | | Use in zones with explosive dusts, Zone: | Dust group of combustible dusts | Minimum ignition temperature of the explosive dusts |
|---|---|---|---|---|
|  | II 2D Ex h IIIB T120°C Db | 21, 22 | IIIA, IIIB | >120 °C |
|  | II 2D Ex h IIIC T120°C Db | 21, 22 | IIIA, IIIB, IIIC | >120 °C |
|  | II 3D Ex h IIIB T120°C Dc | 22 | IIIA, IIIB | >120 °C |
|  | II 3D Ex h IIIC T120°C Dc | 22 | IIIA, IIIB, IIIC | >120 °C |

**Note**

Gearboxes and geared motors are partly completed machines for installation into machinery, or other partly completed machinery or equipment or plants, within the meaning of the current EC Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC and the UK directive "Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008".

Based on the area of validity of these directives, commissioning is prohibited until it has been absolutely identified that the end product is in conformance with these directives.

The SIMOGEAR gearboxes and geared motors have been designed for stationary use in general mechanical engineering applications.

Unless otherwise agreed, the gearboxes and geared motors are intended for use in commercial applications in machinery, other partly completed machinery, or equipment or plants.

The gearboxes and geared motors are shipped in an operationally safe condition. Changes made by users could affect this operational reliability and are forbidden.

**Note**

The data on the rating plate assumes an installation altitude of up to 1 000 m above sea level.

The permissible ambient temperature is stamped on the rating plate.

For different installation altitudes and ambient temperatures, contact Technical Support.

The gearboxes have been designed for the applications described in the Technical data. Do not operate the gearbox outside the specified power limit. Other operating conditions must be contractually agreed.

**Additional information for combinations of gearbox, adapter and motor**

If motors are not mounted directly to the gearboxes (but instead via adapters), the company operating the motors must carefully ensure that the combination of gearbox, adapter and motor is only operated within the specified operating ranges and power limits of the motor component and the gearbox component.

The operating ranges and power limits of both components must be observed. For operating ranges and power limits of the gearboxes or geared motors, refer to Chapter Technical data.

The motor has been designed solely for the operating range described in the operating instructions applicable to the motor. Do not operate the motor outside its specified power limits. The applications that can be addressed by the motor and the power limits are stamped on the rating plate.

Do not climb on the gearbox. Do not place any objects on the gearbox.

### 1.7.2 Predictable incorrect use

**⚠ WARNING**

**Injuries due to incorrect use**

Death or severe injury can occur if you use the gearbox or the geared motor other than in the way intended by Siemens. You destroy or damage the gearbox or the geared motor.

Incorrect use includes, for example

- Not complying with the operating instructions
- Not observing the data on the rating plate
- Using the gearbox or geared motor in hazardous zones
- Using the gearbox or geared motor outside the permissible ambient conditions
- Using the gearbox or geared motor as generator
- Using the motor holding brake as an operating brake to reduce the motor speed
- Using the gearbox or geared motor as a result of its size, its weight, its shape or its material for applications other than those precisely described in this manual

# Fundamental safety instructions

# 2

## 2.1 General safety instructions

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock and danger to life due to other energy sources**

Touching live components can result in death or severe injury.

- Only work on electrical devices when you are qualified for this job.
- Always observe the country-specific safety rules.

Generally, the following steps apply when establishing safety:

1. Prepare for disconnection. Notify all those who will be affected by the procedure.
2. Isolate the drive system from the power supply and take measures to prevent it being switched back on again.
3. Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
4. Check that there is no voltage between any of the power connections, and between any of the power connections and the protective conductor connection.
5. Check whether the existing auxiliary supply circuits are de-energized.
6. Ensure that the motors cannot move.
7. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems, or water. Switch the energy sources to a safe state.
8. Check that the correct drive system is completely locked.

After you have completed the work, restore the operational readiness in the inverse sequence.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock due to connection to an unsuitable power supply**

When equipment is connected to an unsuitable power supply, exposed components may carry a hazardous voltage. Contact with hazardous voltage can result in severe injury or death.

- Only use power supplies that provide SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) or PELV- (Protective Extra Low Voltage) output voltages for all connections and terminals of the electronics modules.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock due to damaged motors or devices**

Improper handling of motors or devices can damage them.

Hazardous voltages can be present at the enclosure or at exposed components on damaged motors or devices.

- Ensure compliance with the limit values specified in the technical data during transport, storage and operation.
- Do not use any damaged motors or devices.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock due to unconnected cable shield**

Hazardous touch voltages can occur through capacitive cross-coupling due to unconnected cable shields.

- As a minimum, connect cable shields and the conductors of power cables that are not used (e.g. brake cores) at one end at the grounded housing potential.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Electric shock if there is no ground connection**

For missing or incorrectly implemented protective conductor connection for devices with protection class I, high voltages can be present at open, exposed parts, which when touched, can result in death or severe injury.

- Ground the device in compliance with the applicable regulations.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Arcing when a plug connection is opened during operation**

Opening a plug connection when a system is in operation can result in arcing that may cause serious injury or death.

- Only open plug connections when the equipment is in a voltage-free state, unless it has been explicitly stated that they can be opened in operation.

**NOTICE**

**Property damage due to loose power connections**

Insufficient tightening torques or vibration can result in loose power connections. This can result in damage due to fire, device defects or malfunctions.

- Tighten all power connections to the prescribed torque.
- Check all power connections at regular intervals, particularly after equipment has been transported.

**NOTICE**

**Damage to equipment due to unsuitable tightening tools.**

Unsuitable tightening tools or fastening methods can damage the screws of the equipment.

- Only use screw inserts that exactly match the screw head.
- Tighten the screws with the torque specified in the technical documentation.
- Use a torque wrench or a mechanical precision nut runner with a dynamic torque sensor and speed limitation system.
- Adjust the tools used regularly.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unexpected machine movement caused by radio devices or mobile phones**

Using radio devices, cellphones, or mobile WLAN devices in the immediate vicinity of the components can result in equipment malfunction. Malfunctions may impair the functional safety of machines and can therefore put people in danger or lead to property damage.

- Therefore, if you move closer than 20 cm to the components, be sure to switch off radio devices, cellphones or WLAN devices.
- Use the "SIEMENS Industry Online Support App" or a QR code scanner only on equipment that has already been switched off.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unrecognized dangers due to missing or illegible warning labels**

Dangers might not be recognized if warning labels are missing or illegible. Unrecognized dangers may cause accidents resulting in serious injury or death.

- Check that the warning labels are complete based on the documentation.
- Attach any missing warning labels to the components, where necessary in the national language.
- Replace illegible warning labels.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unexpected movement of machines caused by inactive safety functions**

Inactive or non-adapted safety functions can trigger unexpected machine movements that may result in serious injury or death.

- Observe the information in the appropriate product documentation before commissioning.
- Carry out a safety inspection for functions relevant to safety on the entire system, including all safety-related components.
- Ensure that the safety functions used in your drives and automation tasks are adjusted and activated through appropriate parameterizing.
- Perform a function test.
- Only put your plant into live operation once you have guaranteed that the functions relevant to safety are running correctly.

**Note**

**Important Safety instructions for Safety Integrated**

If you want to use Safety Integrated functions, you must observe the Safety instructions in the Safety Integrated documentation.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Active implant malfunctions due to electromagnetic fields**

Electromagnetic fields (EMF) are generated by the operation of electrical power equipment, such as transformers, converters, or motors. People with pacemakers or implants are at particular risk in the immediate vicinity of this equipment.

- If this affects you, maintain the minimum distance to such equipment that is specified in the "Important product information" chapter.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Active implant malfunctions due to permanent-magnet fields**

Even when switched off, electric motors with permanent magnets represent a potential risk for persons with heart pacemakers or implants if they are close to converters/motors.

- If this affects you, maintain the minimum distance to such equipment that is specified in the "Important product information" chapter.
- When transporting or storing permanent-magnet motors always use the original packing materials with the warning labels attached.
- Clearly mark the storage locations with the appropriate warning labels.
- IATA regulations must be observed when transported by air.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Injury caused by moving or ejected parts**

Contact with moving motor parts or drive output elements and the ejection of loose motor parts (e.g. feather keys) out of the motor enclosure can result in severe injury or death.

- Remove any loose parts or secure them so that they cannot be flung out.
- Do not touch any moving parts.
- Safeguard all moving parts using the appropriate safety guards.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Fire due to incorrect operation of the motor**

When incorrectly operated and in the case of a fault, the motor can overheat resulting in fire and smoke. This can result in severe injury or death. Further, excessively high temperatures destroy motor components and result in increased failures as well as shorter service lives of motors.

- Operate the motor according to the relevant specifications.
- Only operate the motors in conjunction with effective temperature monitoring.
- Immediately switch off the motor if excessively high temperatures occur.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Burns and thermal damage caused by hot surfaces**

Temperatures above 100 °C may occur on the surfaces of motors, converters, and other drive components.

Touching hot surfaces may result in burns. Hot surfaces may damage or destroy temperature sensitive parts.

- Ensure that temperature-sensitive parts do not come into contact with hot surfaces.
- Mount drive components so that they are not accessible during operation.

Measures when maintenance is required:

- Allow drive components to cool off before starting any work.
- Use appropriate personnel protection equipment, e.g. gloves.

## 2.2 Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD) are individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices that may be damaged by either electric fields or electrostatic discharge.

**NOTICE**

**Equipment damage due to electric fields or electrostatic discharge**

Electric fields or electrostatic discharge can cause malfunctions through damaged individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices.

- Only pack, store, transport and send electronic components, modules or devices in their original packaging or in other suitable materials, e.g conductive foam rubber of aluminum foil.
- Only touch components, modules and devices when you are grounded by one of the following methods:
  - Wearing an ESD wrist strap
  - Wearing ESD shoes or ESD grounding straps in ESD areas with conductive flooring
- Only place electronic components, modules or devices on conductive surfaces (table with ESD surface, conductive ESD foam, ESD packaging, ESD transport container).

## 2.3 Cybersecurity information

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial cybersecurity functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks.

In order to protect plants, systems, machines and networks against cyber threats, it is necessary to implement – and continuously maintain – a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial cybersecurity concept. Siemens' products and solutions constitute one element of such a concept.

Customers are responsible for preventing unauthorized access to their plants, systems, machines and networks. Such systems, machines and components should only be connected to an enterprise network or the internet if and to the extent such a connection is necessary and only when appropriate security measures (e.g. firewalls and/or network segmentation) are in place.

For additional information on industrial cybersecurity measures that may be implemented, please visit
https://www.siemens.com/cybersecurity-industry.

Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development to make them more secure. Siemens strongly recommends that product updates are applied as soon as they are available and that the latest product versions are used. Use of product versions that are no longer supported, and failure to apply the latest updates may increase customer's exposure to cyber threats.

To stay informed about product updates, subscribe to the Siemens Industrial Cybersecurity RSS Feed under
https://new.siemens.com/cert.

Further information is provided on the Internet:

Industrial Security Configuration Manual (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/108862708)

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unsafe operating states resulting from software manipulation**

Software manipulations, e.g. viruses, Trojans, or worms, can cause unsafe operating states in your system that may lead to death, serious injury, and property damage.

- Keep the software up to date.
- Incorporate the automation and drive components into a state-of-the-art, integrated industrial cybersecurity concept for the installation or machine.
- Make sure that you include all installed products in the integrated industrial cybersecurity concept.
- Protect files stored on exchangeable storage media from malicious software by with suitable protection measures, e.g. virus scanners.
- Carefully check all cybersecurity-related settings once commissioning has been completed.

## 2.4 Residual risks of power drive systems

When assessing the machine or system-related risk in accordance with the respective local regulations (e.g. EC Machinery Directive), the machine manufacturer or system integrator must take into account the following residual risks emanating from the control and drive components of a drive system:

1. Unintentional movements of driven machine or system components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example,
   - Hardware faults and/or software errors in the sensors, control system, actuators, and connections
   - Response times of the control system and of the drive
   - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
   - Use of wireless devices/mobile phones in the immediate vicinity of electronic components
   - External influences/damage
   - X-ray, ionizing radiation and cosmic radiation
2. Unusually high temperatures inside and outside the components, including open flames, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. due to fault conditions, e.g.:
   - Component failure
   - Software errors
   - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
   - External influences/damage
   - Short circuits or ground faults in the intermediate DC circuit of the converter
3. Hazardous shock voltages caused by, for example:
   - Component failure
   - Influence during electrostatic charging
   - Induction of voltages in moving motors
   - Operation and/or environmental conditions outside the specification
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - External influences/damage
4. Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc., if they are too close
5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly

6. Influence of network-connected and wireless communications systems, e.g. ripple-control transmitters or data communication via the network or mobile radio, WLAN or Bluetooth.
7. Motors for use in potentially explosive areas:
   When moving components such as bearings become worn, this can cause enclosure components to exhibit unexpectedly high temperatures during operation, creating a hazard in areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere.

For more information about the residual risks of the drive system components, see the relevant sections in the technical user documentation.

# Specific safety instructions

# 3

## 3.1 General overview

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

This symbol marks notes and measures.

This symbol applies to gearboxes and geared motors in an Ex-version.

**Note**

Siemens does not accept any liability for damage and operating faults that result from the non-observance of these operating instructions.

**Note**

**EU RoHS Directive and UK Directive**

SIMOGEAR geared motors comply with the stipulations laid down in Directive 2011/65/EU and UK directive "The Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations 2012" regarding restrictions relating to the use of hazardous substances.

These operating instructions are included with the gearbox when delivered or you can find them in SIOS (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/13424/man). Read the operating instructions before handling the gearbox. Carefully follow the instructions. This is how you ensure safe and disturbance-free function.

These operating instructions apply to the standard version of SIMOGEAR gearboxes.

Table 3-1 Definition of terms

| Term | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Gearbox, gearbox component | Helical, parallel shaft, bevel, helical worm and worm gearboxes |
| Motor, motor component, servomotor, asynchronous motor | Motor that is mounted on the gearbox. |
| Adapter | Mechanical assembly for transferring speed and torque from the motor to the gearbox. |
| Geared motor, gearbox and motor combination, unit, gearbox-adapter-motor-unit; overall drive | Mechanical assembly (unit) consisting of the components gearbox (adapter if applicable) and motor. |

**Note**

In addition to these operating instructions, special contractual agreements and technical documentation apply to a special gearbox design and the associated supplementary equipment.

When using additional components, carefully observe the notes in the associated documentation.

Refer to the other operating instructions and safety instructions supplied with the product.

**Valid operating instructions for SIMOGEAR**

Can be found in SIOS (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/13424/man)

- BA 2030 - operating instructions for SIMOGEAR gearboxes
- BA 2031 - operating instructions for permissible mounting position deviations of SIMOGEAR gearboxes
- BA 2039 - operating instructions for adapters for mounting on SIMOGEAR gearboxes
- BA 2330 - operating instructions for motors for mounting onto SIMOGEAR gearboxes
- BA 2331 - Operating instructions for geared motors with DRIVE-CLiQ safety-related encoder for safety-related applications
- BA 2332 - operating instructions for geared motors with holding brake for safety-related applications
- BA 2535 - Operating instructions for SIMOGEAR gearboxes for monorail conveyors
- BA 2730 - Operating instructions for SIMOGEAR geared motors with encoder for safety-relevant applications
- Operating instructions for geared motors for mounting onto a G115D Motor Mounted

**Additional valid operating instructions for combinations of gearbox, adapter and motor**

- SIMOTICS GP 1LE1 motors: Document ID A5E38483075A
  SIMOTICS GP 1LE1 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/32182362)
- SIMOTICS XP 1MB1 motors: Document ID A5E41926185A
  SIMOTICS XP 1MB1 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109763259)
- Operating instructions SIMOTICS - synchronous motors S-1FK7 G2
  Document ID A5E50907562A
  SIMOTICS S-1FK7 G2 synchronous motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109743519)
- Operating instructions SIMOTICS - synchronous motors S-1FT7
  Document ID A5E50907611A
  SIMOTICS S-1FT7 synchronous motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109479725)
- Operating instructions SINAMICS/SIMOTICS - synchronous motors SIMOTICS S-1FK2
  Document ID A5E41702836A
  SINAMICS/SIMOTICS S-1FK2 synchronous motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ao/en/view/109801184)

- Operating instructions SIMOTICS - main motors SIMOTICS M-1PH813/1PH816
  Document ID A5E50030782A
  SIMOTICS M-1PH813/1PH816 main motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109782099)
- Operating instructions SIMOTICS - main motors SIMOTICS M-1PH808/1PH810
  Document ID A5E50030759A
  SIMOTICS M-1PH808/1PH810 main motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109792132)

**Additional valid operating instructions**

- Operating instructions SIMOTICS XP - low-voltage motors 1MB..1/2/3/4 - shaft heights 63 ... 355
  Document ID A5E44455710A
  Low-voltage motors 1MB..1/2/3/4 - shaft heights 63 ... 355 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/109757981)

The described gearboxes and geared motors are state-of-the-art at the time these operating instructions were printed.

Siemens reserves the right to change individual components and accessory parts in the interest of ongoing development. The changes serve to improve the performance and safety. The significant features are retained. The operating instructions are always being updated with new contents.

The new versions of the operating instructions, the declaration of incorporation and the Declarations of Conformity are available in SIOS (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/ps/13424/man).

## 3.2 Installation notes

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Impermissible housing loadings when unevenness present**<br>Ensure that the housing feet and flanges are screwed together without distortion.<br>The foundation structure must be low-vibration, level and torsionally rigid. The evenness of the mounting surface for gearboxes in foot and flange design must be according to DIN ISO 2768-2. Max. deviations are to be taken from the tolerance class K.<br>Thoroughly remove any dirt from the foundation and the screw mounting surface of the gearbox. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Impermissible external forces**<br>No additional external forces resulting from customer-specific attachments, support of other components on the gearbox or geared motor are permitted.<br>The installation of original attachments (oil expansion unit, cover hoods, etc.) and the resulting forces are permitted. |

**Prerequisites for smooth, vibration-free running**

- Stable foundation design
- Precise alignment of the machine
- Correct balancing of the parts to be mounted on the shaft extension
- Compliance with vibration severity values according to ISO 20816-1

**Vibration severity**

Due to the influencing variables listed below, the vibration response of the system at the location of use can lead to increased vibration severity on the drive unit:

- Transmission elements
- Installation conditions
- Alignment and installation
- Effects of external and internal oscillation

The vibration severity values specified in accordance with ISO 20816-1 must not be exceeded at any point on the surface of the drive. This ensures problem-free operation and a long service life.

**Maximum permissible vibration severity**

Observe the values for the maximum permissible radial and axial oscillation vibration severity in the following table. Radial/axial refers to the motor axes.

**Maximum permissible radial vibration levels**

| Vibration frequency | Vibration value |
|---|---|
| < 6.3 Hz | Vibration displacement$_s$ ≤ 0.16 mm |
| 6.3 Hz to 250 Hz | Vibration velocity $v_{rms}$ ≤ 4.5 mm/s |
| > 250 Hz | Vibration acceleration $a_{peak}$ ≤ 10 m/s$^2$ |

**Maximum permissible axial vibration severity**

| Vibration velocity | Vibration acceleration |
|---|---|
| Vibration velocity $v_{rms}$ ≤ 4.5 mm/s | Vibration acceleration $a_{peak}$ ≤ 10 m/s$^2$ |

**Resonant frequencies**

Resonance can occur in the speed range of the geared motor depending on the machine to be driven.

Operation in resonance causes increased noise and vibration levels.

Adherence to the maximum permissible vibration severity is always required.

Operation in the resonant frequency leads to a reduced service life of the geared motor, irrespective of adherence to the maximum vibration severity.

Continuous operation in the resonant frequency must be avoided.

## 3.3 Residual risks when operating geared motors

The geared motors may be operated only if all protective equipment is used.

Geared motors may be handled only by qualified and instructed qualified personnel that knows and observes all safety instructions for the geared motors that are explained in the associated technical user documentation.

## 3.4 Geared motor with encoder for safety-relevant applications

For a SIMOGEAR geared motor with rotary encoder for safety-relevant applications, carefully observe the information provided in operating instructions BA 2331 or BA 2730 These operating instructions are valid for functionally safe rotary encoders that are mounted onto SIMOGEAR geared motors. The functionally safe rotary encoders are in compliance with the relevant standards for safety-relevant applications listed in the Declaration of Conformity of BA 2730.

The SIMOGEAR geared motor with functionally safe rotary encoder has a signal yellow marking on the fan cover. Marking SI04 for the functionally safe rotary encoder is stamped on the rating plate. The safety level is marked on the functionally safe rotary encoder itself.

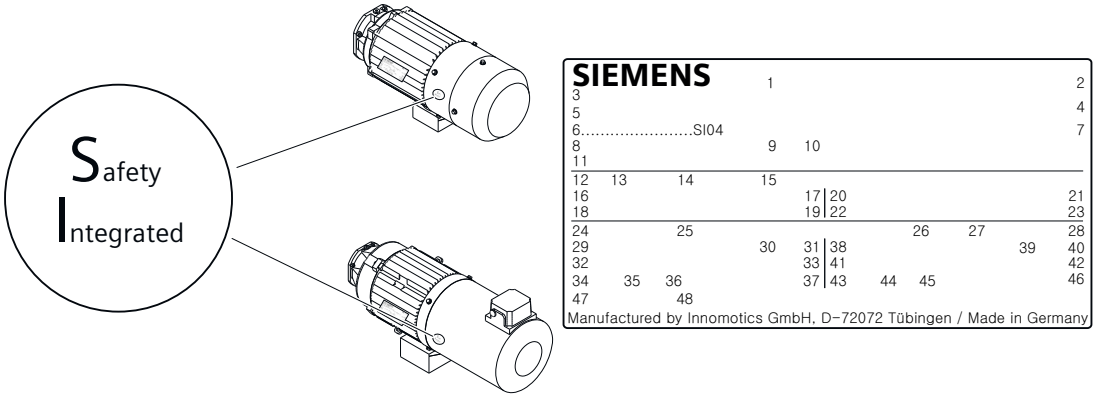



Figure 3-1 Marking for functional safety

## 3.5 Specific hazard types and fundamental obligations

**⚠ WARNING**

**Hot, escaping oil**

Before starting any work wait until the oil has cooled down to below +30 °C.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Poisonous vapors when working with solvents**

Avoid breathing vapors when working with solvents.

Ensure adequate ventilation.

| ⚠ **WARNING** |
| --- |
| **Risk of explosion when working with solvents** |
| Ensure adequate ventilation. |
| Do not smoke. |

The company operating the unit must ensure that all persons assigned to work on the geared motor have read and understood these operating instructions and that they comply with them in all points in order to:

- Eliminate the risk to life and limb of users and others
- Ensure the operational safety of the geared motor.
- Avoid disruptions and environmental damage through incorrect use.

**Comply with the following safety instructions:**

In addition to the specified personal protection gear, also wear suitable protective gloves and safety glasses.

Comply with the instructions on the rating plates attached to the geared motor. The rating plates must be kept free from paint and dirt at all times. Replace any missing rating plates.

Collect and dispose of used oil in accordance with regulations. Immediately remove any spilt oil with an oil-binding agent.

Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment or sharp-edged tools to clean the geared motor.

The machine OEM who installs the geared motors in a plant must include the regulations contained in these operating instructions in its own operating instructions.

During operation, comply with the vibration levels according to ISO 20816-1. Maximum permissible vibration values can be found in Installation notes (Page 29).

# Technical description

# 4

## 4.1 General technical description

The gearbox is supplied with one, two or three transmission stages.

The gearbox is suitable for various mounting positions. Check the correct oil level.

**Gearbox housing**

The housings for sizes 19 and 29 are made of die-cast aluminum.

Depending on the gearbox type, the housings of sizes 39 and 49 are made of die-cast aluminum or cast iron.

The gearbox housing of worm geared motor S is manufactured out of die-cast aluminum.

Table 4-1 Housing material

| Gearbox type | Size | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 39 | 39A | 49 |
| Helical gearbox E | Cast iron | | Cast iron |
| Helical gearbox D/Z | Aluminum | | Cast iron |
| Parallel shaft gearbox F | Cast iron | | Cast iron |
| Bevel gearbox B | Aluminum | | Aluminum |
| Bevel gearbox K | Cast iron | | Cast iron |
| Helical worm gearbox C | | Aluminum | Cast iron |

From size 59, the gearbox housings are made of cast iron.

**Geared components**

The geared components are hardened and ground.

For the helical worm gearbox, the worm is hardened and ground. The gear is manufactured from high-quality bronze.

The bevel gear stage of the bevel gearbox is lapped in pairs.

The gear of the worm geared motor is manufactured out of high-quality bronze.

**Lubrication**

The intermeshing parts are supplied with lubricant by means of splash lubrication.

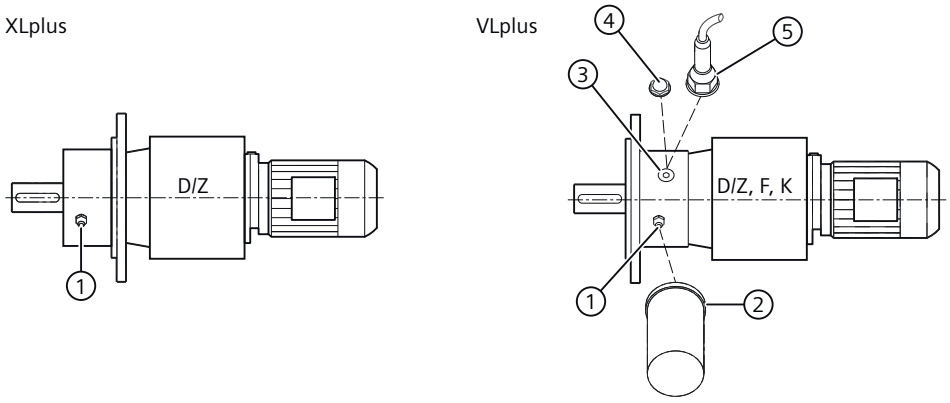
The worm geared motor is lubricated for life with high-quality synthetic oil.

**Shaft bearings**

All shafts are mounted in rolling bearings. The rolling bearings are lubricated using splash lubrication or oil-spray lubrication. Bearings that are not supplied with lubricant are closed and grease-lubricated.

## 4.2 Technical description of the XLplus and VLplus heavy-duty bearing systems

**XLplus and VLplus heavy-duty bearing systems**




① Grease nipple
② Automatic regreasing device (optional)
③ Screw plug
④ Dry-well oil sight glass (optional)
⑤ Dry-well oil sensor (optional)

Figure 4-1 XLplus and VLplus heavy-duty bearing systems

The multi-stage helical gearbox sizes 89-169 can be supplied with an XLplus or VLplus heavy-duty bearing system.

The parallel-shaft gearbox and the helical gearbox sizes 89-169 can be supplied with a VLplus heavy-duty bearing system.

With an upstream locating bearing, the bearing system is suitable for high external forces. The absorbed radial and axial loads are transmitted to the machine via the flange.

The bearings are lubricated independently of the frame size. Initial greasing has already been carried out. The relubrication is made with the provided grease nipple.

Options for the VLplus heavy-duty bearing system:

An automatic regreasing device ② can be supplied as option. The automatic regreasing device ② can be installed at any position and can be used underwater.

A dry-well version with oil sight glass ④ or oil sensor ⑤ can be supplied as option. The dry-well version offers increased protection against oil leaks when the output shaft points down. The flange captures any escaping gear oil for leakages at the oil chamber. The escaping oil is signaled optically with an oil sight glass ④ or electronically by an oil sensor ⑤. If the oil sensor ⑤ is deployed in Ex-version gearboxes, the sensor must be operated with a disconnector approved for Ex.

## 4.3 Shaft seals

The shaft sealing rings on the output side prevent lubricant from escaping from the housing at the shaft outlet and prevent pollution from entering the housing.

The optimum use of the seals depends on the ambient conditions and the lubricant being used.

**Radial shaft sealing ring**

A high-quality radial shaft sealing ring is used as standard seal. The ring is provided with an additional dust lip to protect against contaminants from outside.

Permitted oil sump temperatures -40° C to +80° C.

**Seal for a longer service life (optional)**

The radial shaft sealing ring with dust lip has an additional buffer axial seal towards the inside of the gearbox. The sealing system has a high degree of reliability as a result of the insensitivity with respect to contaminations in the oil.

Permitted oil sump temperatures -40° C to +100° C.

**Seal to handle increased environmental stress (optional)**

This seal is equipped with an additional fiber disk. The disk so provides increased protection against higher environmental stress caused by dirt and dust.

Permitted oil sump temperatures -20° C to +80° C.

**High temperature-resistant seal (optional)**

The deployed radial shaft sealing rings are made of a temperature-resistant material.

Permitted oil sump temperatures -25° C to +110° C.

## 4.4 Cooling

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Dust deposits prevent heat radiation** |
| Dust deposits prevent heat radiation and cause a high housing temperature. |
| Keep the gearbox free from dirt, dust, etc. |

The gearbox does not normally require additional cooling. The generously dimensioned housing surface is sufficient for dissipating heat losses where there is free convection. If the housing temperature exceeds a value of +80 °C, please contact Technical Support.

## 4.5 Rating plate

The rating plate of the gearbox or geared motor is printed on a labeled polyester film or optionally on a stainless steel rating plate. The rating plate is glued using a special masking film. The film ensures permanent resistance to UV radiation and media of all kinds, such as oils, greases, salt water and cleaning agents.

The adhesive and material ensure firm adhesion and long-term readability throughout the operating temperature range of the gearbox and geared motor.

The edges of the rating plate are paint-finished to match the color of the gearbox or motor to which it is affixed.

# 4.6 Surface treatment

## 4.6.1 General information on surface treatment

All paint finishes are sprayed on.

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

The gearbox is delivered complete with primer and paint finish.

If the gearbox is delivered with primer only or unpainted, then a paint finish must be applied which conforms with the applicable guidelines for the specific application. The primer does not provide corrosion protection.

**Worm geared motor S in Ex-version**

As standard, the worm geared motor is not painted.

The worm geared motor is optionally delivered complete with primer and paint finish.

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

When applying conductive paint, the operating company must ensure that the paint remains in a perfect state.
The paint finish must be checked at intervals of 2 - 3 years.

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

An excessively high electrostatic charging must be avoided.
Ensure that highly active mechanisms that cause the paint finish to generate a charge are avoided.
Highly active mechanisms that can generate charges:

- Fast air with high dust content directed past the gearbox
- Sudden escape of compressed gases that contain particles
- Harsh abrasive procedures, this does not mean manual cleaning / wiping with cloths.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Danger due to electrostatic discharge**

For paint finishes in explosion group III, the paint can be electrostatically charged as a result of intensive dust turbulence or processes with high levels of electrostatic charging.

Risk of explosion as a result of processes with high levels of electrostatic charging

Minimize the risk of electrostatic charging by applying effective measures according to IEC 60079-32-1.

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Failure of the external protection**<br>If the paint finish is damaged, the geared motor may corrode.<br>Do not damage the paint finish. |

**Note**

Information about the ability to be repainted does not guarantee the quality of the paint product supplied by your supplier.

Only the paint manufacturer is liable for the quality and compatibility.

**Note**

C1 paints are not suitable for ambient air temperatures below -20° C.

## 4.6.2 Painted version

The corrosion protection system is classified according to the corrosiveness categories in DIN EN ISO 12944-2.

**Paint according to corrosiveness categories**

| Paint system | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Corrosiveness category C1, unpainted for gearbox and motor housings made of aluminum | |
| - | • Indoor installation<br>• Heated buildings with neutral atmospheres<br>• Resistance to greases and some resistance to mineral oils, aliphatic solvents<br>• Standard |

| Paint system | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Corrosiveness category C1 for normal environmental stress | |
| 1-component hydro paint, top coat | • Indoor installation<br>• Heated buildings with neutral atmospheres<br>• Resistance to greases and some resistance to mineral oils, aliphatic solvents<br>• Standard paint for gearbox housings made of cast iron |

| Paint system | Description |
|---|---|
| Corrosiveness category C2 for low environmental stress | |
| 2-component - polyurethane top coat | • Indoor and outdoor installation<br>• Unheated buildings with condensation, production areas with low humidity, e.g. warehouses and sports facilities<br>• Atmospheres with low levels of pollution, frequently rural areas<br>• Resistance to greases, mineral oils and sulfuric acid (10 %), caustic soda (10 %) and is conditionally resistant to aliphatic solvents |

| Paint system | Description |
|---|---|
| Corrosiveness category C3 for medium environmental stress | |
| 2-component epoxy zinc phosphate base coat,<br>2-component polyurethane top coat | • Indoor and outdoor installation<br>• Production areas with high humidity and some air contamination, e.g. food production areas, dairies, breweries and laundries<br>• Urban and industrial atmospheres, moderate contamination from sulfur dioxide, coastal areas with low salt levels<br>• Resistance to greases, mineral oils, aliphatic solvents, sulfuric acid (10 %), caustic soda (10 %) |

| Paint system | Description |
|---|---|
| Corrosiveness category C4 for high environmental stress | |
| 2-component epoxy zinc phosphate base coat,<br>2-component polyurethane top coat | • Indoor and outdoor installation<br>• Chemical plants, swimming pools, wastewater treatment plants, electroplating shops, and boathouses above seawater<br>• Industrial areas and coastal areas with moderate salt levels<br>• Resistance to greases, mineral oils, aliphatic solvents, sulfuric acid (10 %), caustic soda (10 %) |

| Paint system | Description |
|---|---|
| Corrosiveness category C5 for very high environmental stress | |
| 2-component epoxy zinc phosphate base coat,<br>2-component polyurethane intermediate coat,<br>2-component polyurethane top coat | • Indoor and outdoor installation<br>• Buildings and areas with almost constant condensation and high levels are contamination, e.g. malt factories and aseptic areas<br>• Industrial areas with high humidity and aggressive atmosphere, coastal areas and offshore environments with high salt levels<br>• Resistance to greases, mineral oils, aliphatic solvents, sulfuric acid (10 %), caustic soda (20 %) |

In case of corrosiveness category C1, overpainting with a 1-component hydrosystem after prior rubbing down is possible.

In case of corrosiveness categories C2 to C5, overpainting with 2-component polyurethane paint, 2-component epoxide paint and 2-component acrylic paint after prior rubbing down is possible.

## 4.6.3 Primed version

**Primer according to corrosiveness category**

| Paint system | Can be overpainted with |
|---|---|
| Unpainted corrosiveness category C1 | |
| Cast iron parts immersion primed,<br>steel parts primed or zinc-plated,<br>aluminum and plastic parts untreated | • Synthetic paint, synthetic resin paint, oil paint<br>• 2-component polyurethane paint<br>• 2-component epoxy paint |

| Paint system | Can be overpainted with |
|---|---|
| Primer according to corrosiveness category C2 G | |
| 2-component epoxy zinc phosphate,<br>specified coat thickness 60 µm | • 2-component - polyurethane paint<br>• 2-component - epoxy paint<br>• 2-component - acrylic paint<br>• Acid-hardening paint |

| Paint system | Can be overpainted with |
|---|---|
| Primer according to corrosiveness category C4 G | |
| 2-component epoxy zinc phosphate,<br>desired coat thickness 90 µm | • 2-component - polyurethane paint<br>• 2-component - epoxy paint<br>• 2-component - acrylic paint<br>• Acid-hardening paint |

## 4.7 Ex ignition hazards in accordance with EN 80079-37

**Ex-version gearboxes**

Ex marking
Regardless of the type of protection, the letter »h« is always assigned. In addition to the marking on the rating plate, the valid types of protection below are applied:

Constructional safety "c"
Constructional safety is ensured by selecting suitable materials and components, dimensioning the product for the customer's application, suitable sealing systems, adequate lubrication of rolling bearings, geared components and seals and by thermal testing.

Liquid immersion "k"
The liquid immersion is achieved through oil bath lubrication. Refer to the type plate and the operating instructions for the original oil filling.

Monitoring ignition sources "b"
Monitoring ignition sources is achieved by monitoring the temperature and/or electrically monitoring the oil level.

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

Servicing and maintenance work that are relevant for the type of protection shall only be carried out by SIEMENS service personnel or by SIEMENS authorized partners.

# Goods received, transport and storage

# 5

## 5.1 Incoming goods

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Transport damage** |
| Neither install nor commission damage products |

**Note**

If you do not install the product immediately, do not remove or damage any of the packaging because this serves as preservation and/or corrosion protection

**Note**

Check that the technical specifications are in accordance with the purchase order.

Inspect the delivery immediately on arrival for completeness and any transport damage.

When you receive the goods, immediately check them for any transport damage. Immediately report any transport damage that is identified to the transport company.

The gearbox or geared motor is delivered in a fully assembled condition. Additional items are shipped in separate packaging if applicable.

The products supplied are listed in the dispatch papers.

## 5.2 Transport

### 5.2.1 General information on transport

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **The use of force will damage the gearbox or geared motor** |
| Transport the gearbox or geared motor carefully. Avoid knocks. |
| Before putting the drive into operation, remove any transport fixtures and keep them safe or render them ineffective. You can then use them again for transporting further items or you can apply them again. |

Different forms of packaging may be used, depending on the size of the gearbox or geared motor and the method of transport. Unless contractually agreed otherwise, the seaworthy

packaging complies with HPE Packaging Guidelines (Bundesverband Holzpackmittel Paletten Exportverpackungen e.V., the German Federal Association for wooden packaging, pallets, and export packaging).

Note the symbols which appear on the packaging. These have the following meanings:


This way up


Center of gravity


Fragile


Do not use hand hook


Keep dry


Attach here


Keep cool

## 5.2.2 Fastening for suspended transport

**⚠ WARNING**

**Inadequately fastened gearboxes or geared motors can break loose**

Use only the transport eye or eyebolt of the gearbox to transport the gearbox or geared motor. The eye and the bolt are designed only for the weight of the gearbox or geared motor. It is not permissible to add additional loads to the eye and bolt.

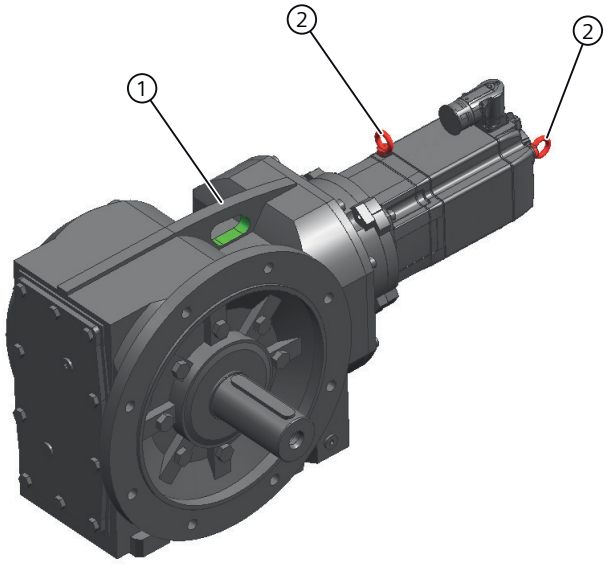
Do not rig eyebolts to the front threads at the shaft ends for transportation purposes.

Existing eyebolts and cast-on lifting eyes on the motor housing are not designed to support the entire unit. If you lift the unit only by the eyebolts or lifting eyes on the motor housing, the eyebolts may be ripped out of the threads or the lifting eyes may break off and cause serious or fatal injury. Use eyebolts or lifting eyes on the motor housing only for position stabilization.

Observe the maximum specified load on the eyebolt. Stress applied transversely to the ring plane is not permissible. Do not use bent or damaged eyebolts.

Use additional, suitable lifting accessories for transport or during installation.

When attaching using several chains and ropes, 2 cable/chain strands must be sufficient to carry the complete load. Secure lifting accessories against slipping.




① Transport eye gearbox
Support for the geared motor unit.

② ATTENTION!
Eyebolt motor housing
Sole support of the entire geared motor unit not permitted!
Support only for position stabilization.

Figure 5-1 Use of transport eye and eyebolt

Table 5-1 Maximum load of the eyebolt on the gearbox

| Thread size | m | $d_3$ | Thread size | m | $d_3$ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | kg | mm | | kg | mm |
| M8 | 140 | 36 | M20 | 1200 | 72 |
| M10 | 230 | 45 | M24 | 1800 | 90 |
| M12 | 340 | 54 | M30 | 3 200 | 108 |
| M16 | 700 | 63 | - | - | - |

The eyebolt corresponds to DIN 580.

## Procedure

1. Transport the gearbox or geared motor by the lifting eyes or eyebolts on the gearbox housing.
2. The lifting eyes and eyebolts are designed only for the weight of the gearbox or geared motor. It is not permissible to add additional loads such as built-on parts on the gearbox to the lifting eyes and eyebolts.
3. Remove any eyebolts that are no longer required after transport.

You have prepared the gearbox or geared motor for transport.

# 5.3 Storage

## 5.3.1 General information for storage

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Danger of serious injuries caused by falling objects** |
| **Danger of damage to the gearbox when stacked** |
| Do not stack gearboxes or geared motors on each other. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Failure of the external protection** |
| Mechanical damage, chemical damage and thermal damage, such as scratches, acids, alkalis, sparks, welding beads and heat cause corrosion. |
| Do not damage the paint finish. |

Unless contractually agreed otherwise, the guarantee period for the standard preservative lasts 6 months from the date of delivery.

In the case of storage in transit over 6 months, special arrangements must be made for preservation. Contact Technical Support.

Store the gearbox or geared motor in dry, dust-free rooms that are maintained at a constant temperature.

The storage location must be vibration- and shock-free.

The free shaft ends, sealing elements and flange surfaces must have a protective coating.

Do not store the geared motor on the fan cover.

## 5.3.2 Storage up to 36 months with long-term preservation (optional)

### 5.3.2.1 General notes for storage up to 36 months

Store the gearbox or geared motor in dry, dust-free rooms that are maintained at a constant temperature. Special packing is then not necessary.

If such premises are not available, pack the gearbox or the geared motor in plastic film or air-tight sealed film and materials. The films and materials must be able to accept moisture. Cover them to provide protection against heat, direct sunlight and rain.

The permissible ambient temperature is -25 °C to +50 °C.

The life of the corrosion protection is 36 months from delivery.

#### 5.3.2.2 Gearbox filled with operating oil and anti-corrosive agent

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to the gearbox caused by incorrect oil quantities** |
| Check the oil level before commissioning. |
| Observe the information and procedures for Checking the oil level (Page 94). |

The gearbox is filled with oil corresponding to the mounting position so that it is ready for operation, and is sealed airtight using a screw plug or with a pressure breather valve with transport fixture.

For storage up to 36 months, a VCI anti-corrosion agent (**V**olatile **C**orrosion **I**nhibitor) is added.

#### 5.3.2.3 Gearbox completely filled with oil

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to the gearbox caused by incorrect oil quantities** |
| Prior to commissioning, remove excessive oil until it has the correct oil level. |
| Observe the information and procedures for Correcting the oil level (Page 94). |

When biodegradable oils or oils for the food-processing sector are used, the gearbox is filled completely with operating oil. The gearbox is closed air-tight with a sealing plug or a pressure venting with transport fixture.

Do not lower the oil level during short-time commissioning for 10 minutes in no-load operation.

# Mounting

# 6

## 6.1 Unpacking

Remove and dispose of the packaging material and transport equipment in compliance with regulations.

## 6.2 General information on installation

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

Effect on bearings of stray electric currents from electrical equipment.

When mounting the gearbox on or connecting it to the machine, take care to ensure potential equalization. The information on grounding and equipotential bonding provided by the motor supplier must be observed.

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Operating under load** |
| Under load, the system can start or reverse in an uncontrolled fashion. |
| The entire system must be load-free so that there is no danger during this work. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Destruction caused by welding** |
| Welding destroys the geared components and the bearings. |
| Do not weld on the gearbox or the geared motor. The gearbox or the geared motor must not be used as a grounding point for welding operations. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Overheating caused by solar radiation** |
| Overheating of the gearbox or the geared motor due to exposure to direct sunlight. |
| Provide suitable protective equipment such as covers or roofs. Prevent heat accumulation. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Malfunction resulting from foreign objects** |
| The operating company must ensure that no foreign objects impair the function of the gearbox or geared motor. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damaged components impair the correct function of the gearbox or geared motor** |
| If any components are damaged, the correct function of the gearbox or geared motor is no longer guaranteed. |
| Do not install any damaged gearbox components. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Violation of the maximum permissible oil sump temperature** |
| The oil sump temperature will be exceeded if the temperature monitoring equipment is incorrectly set. |
| An alarm must be output when the maximum permissible oil sump temperature is reached. The geared motor must be switched off when the maximum permissible temperature is exceeded. The machine will come to a standstill if the geared motor is shut down. |

Exercise particular care during mounting and installation. The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage caused by incorrect mounting and installation.

Ensure that there is sufficient space around the gearbox or geared motor for installation, maintenance and repair work.

On geared motors with a fan, leave sufficient free space for the entry of air. Observe the installation conditions for the geared motor.

Provide sufficient lifting gear at the start of mounting and fitting work.

Observe the mounting position specified on the rating plate. This ensures that the correct quantity of lubricant is provided.

Use all the fastening means that have been assigned to the particular mounting position and mounting type.

Cap bolts cannot be used in some cases due to a lack of space. In such cases, please contact Technical Support quoting the type of gearbox.

For inclined mounting positions or extreme environmental effects, protect the drive by applying additional measures (e.g. a laterally mounted weather protection canopy).

## 6.3 Thread sizes and tightening torques for fastening bolts

The general tolerance for the tightening torque is 10%. The tightening torque is based on a friction coefficient of μ = 0.14.

Table 6-1 Tightening torques for fixing screws

| **Thread size** | **Tightening torque for property class** | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| | **8.8** | **10.9** | **12.9** |
| | **Nm** | **Nm** | **Nm** |
| M4 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| M5 | 6 | 9 | 10 |

| Thread size | Tightening torque for property class | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 8.8 | 10.9 | 12.9 |
| | Nm | Nm | Nm |
| M6 | 10 | 15 | 18 |
| M8 | 25 | 35 | 41 |
| M10 | 50 | 70 | 85 |
| M12 | 90 | 120 | 145 |
| M16 | 210 | 295 | 355 |
| M20 | 450 | 580 | 690 |
| M24 | 750 | 1 000 | 1 200 |
| M30 | 1 500 | 2 000 | 2 400 |
| M36 | 2 500 | 3 600 | 4 200 |

## 6.4 Gearbox with foot mounting

Design and construct the foundation in such a way that no resonance vibration occurs and no vibration is transmitted from adjacent foundations.

The foundation structure on which the gearbox is to be mounted must be torsionally rigid. Design and construct the foundation taking into account the weight and torque of the forces acting on the gearbox. If the substructure is too weak, it will cause radial or axial displacement offset during operation that cannot be measured at a standstill.

If the gearbox is fastened to a concrete foundation, use foundation blocks for the appropriate recesses.

Align and grout the slide rails into the foundation.

Align the gearbox carefully with the units on the input and output side. Take into account the elastic deformation due to operating forces.

Prevent displacement from external forces due to lateral impacts.

Use stud bolts or headless screws of strength class 8.8 or higher for the mounting foot. Comply with the tightening torque.

Table 6-2 Thread size of the fastening bolt

| Thread size | Helical gearbox | | Parallel shaft gearbox F | Bevel gearbox B, K | Helical worm gearbox C | Worm geared motor S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | E | D/Z | | | | |
| | Size | | | | | |
| M8 | - | 19, 29, 39 | 29, 39 | B19, B29, B39 | 29 | 09, 19, 29 |
| M10 | 39 | - | 49 | B49, K39, K49 | 39A, 39, 49 | - |
| M12 | 49 | 49, 59, 69 | 69, 79 | K69, K79 | 69 | - |
| M16 | 69, 89 | 79, 89 | 89, 109 | K89 | 89 | - |
| M20 | 109, 129 | 109 | 129 | K109 | - | - |
| M24 | - | 129 | 149 | K129 | - | - |

| Thread size | Helical gearbox | | Parallel shaft gearbox F | Bevel gearbox B, K | Helical worm gearbox C | Worm geared motor S |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | E | D/Z | | | | |
| | Size | | | | | |
| M30 | 149 | 149 | 169 | K149 | - | - |
| M36 | - | 169, 189 | 189 | K169, K189 | - | - |

## 6.5 Gearbox with flange fastening

**Note**

Siemens recommends an anaerobic adhesive to enhance the friction lock between flange and mounting surface.

Table 6-3 Thread size of the fastening bolt

| Thread size | Flange | Helical gearbox E, D/Z | Parallel shaft gearbox F | Bevel gearbox B, K | Helical worm gearbox C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Size | | | |
| M6 | A120 | 19, 29, 39 | 29 | B19, B29 | 29 |
| M8 | A140, A160 | 19, 29, 39, 49, 59 | 29, 39 | B29, B39, K39 | 29, 39 |
| M10 | A200 | 39, 49, 59, 69 | 49 | B39, B49, K49 | 49, 69 |
| M12 | A250, A300 | 49, 59, 69, 79, 89, 109 | 69, 79, 89 | K69, K79, K89 | 89 |
| M16 | A350 | 79, 89, 109, 129, 149 | 109 | K109 | - |
| M16 | A450 | 89, 109, 129, 149, 169 | 129, 149 | K129, K149 | - |
| M16 | A550 | 129, 149, 169, 189 | 169 | K169 | - |
| M20 | A660 | 169, 189 | 189 | K189 | - |

Use screws / nuts of strength class 8.8 for gearboxes with a flange-mounted design.

Comply with the following exceptions:

Table 6-4 Strength class of the fastening bolt for FF/FAF and KF/KAF

| Gearbox size | Flange | Strength class for motor size | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 90 | 100 | 112 | 132 | 160 | 180 | 200 | 225 | 250 | 280 | 315 |
| 39 | A160 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 49 | A200 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 69 | A250 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.9 | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 79 | A250 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 89 | A300 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - | - | - | - | - |
| 109 | A350 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - | - | - |
| 129 | A450 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | - | - | - |
| 149 | A450 | - | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - | - |

| Gearbox size | Flange | Strength class for motor size | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 90 | 100 | 112 | 132 | 160 | 180 | 200 | 225 | 250 | 280 | 315 |
| 169 | A550 | - | - | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 | - |
| 189 | A660 | - | - | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.9 | 10.9 | 10.9 |

Table 6-5 Strength class of the fastening bolt / nut for EZ, EF, DZ/ZZ and DF/ZF

| Gearbox size | | Flange | Strength class |
|---|---|---|---|
| E | D/Z | | |
| 39 | 29, 39 | A120 | 10.9 [1)] |
| - | 49 | A140 | 10.9 |
| 49 | 59 | A160 | |
| 69 | 69 | A200 | |
| 89 | 79 | A250 | |
| 109 | 89 | A300 | |
| 129, 149 | 109, 129 | A350 | |
| - | 149, 169 | A450 | |
| - | 189 | A550 | |

1) Use suitable washers under the nuts / bolt heads

## 6.6 Gearboxes in foot or flange version

| NOTICE |
|---|
| **Impermissible housing loadings caused by incorrectly installed add-on elements** |
| Do not subject the gearbox housing to excessive stress by adding add-on elements to the foot or flange. |
| Add-on elements must not transmit forces, torques, and vibrations to the gearbox. |

To prevent strains on the housing, fasten the gearbox only on the flange or the foot fastening for force and torque transmission. Refer to Gearbox with foot mounting (Page 49).

The second mounting option (foot or flange) is intended for add-on elements, e.g. protection covers with an intrinsic weight of up to max. 30 % of the weight of the gearbox.

## 6.7 Gearbox with C-type housing flange

The gearbox with C-type housing flange is delivered ready for mounting on machines. It is mounted using an inner centering. Depending on the version, the sealing rings are pressed in deeper at the DE and/or NDE so that simple mounting is ensured.

**Note**

If the inserted sealing ring is located on the top of the gearbox, neither water nor dirt can collect. We recommend the use of a protection cover (optional).

## 6.8 Mounting an input or output element on the gearbox shaft

**⚠ WARNING**

**Risk of burns caused by hot parts**

Do not touch the gearbox without protection.

**NOTICE**

**Damage to shaft sealing rings caused by solvent**

Avoid contact of solvent or benzine with the shaft sealing rings.

**NOTICE**

**Damage to shaft sealing rings caused by heating**

Use thermal shields to protect shaft sealing rings from heating above 100 °C due to radiant heat.

**NOTICE**

**Premature wear or material damage due to misalignment**

Misalignment caused by excessive angular or axial misalignment of the shaft ends to be joined.

Ensure precise alignment of the individual components.

**NOTICE**

**Damage caused by improper handling**

Bearings, housing, shaft and locking rings are damaged due to improper handling.

Do not use impact or knocks to mount input and output elements onto the shaft.

**Note**

Deburr the parts of elements to be fitted in the area of the hole or keyways.

Recommendation: 0.2 x 45°

Where couplings are to be fitted in a heated condition, observe the specific operating instructions for the coupling. Unless otherwise specified, apply the heat inductively using a torch or in a furnace.

Use the center holes in the shaft end faces.

Use a fitting device to fit the input or output elements.

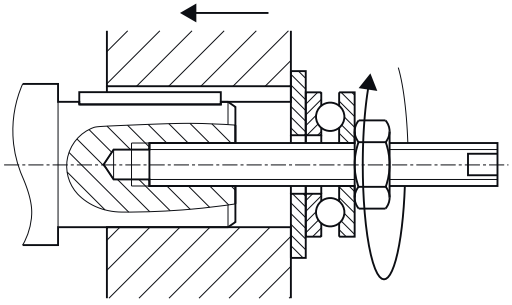
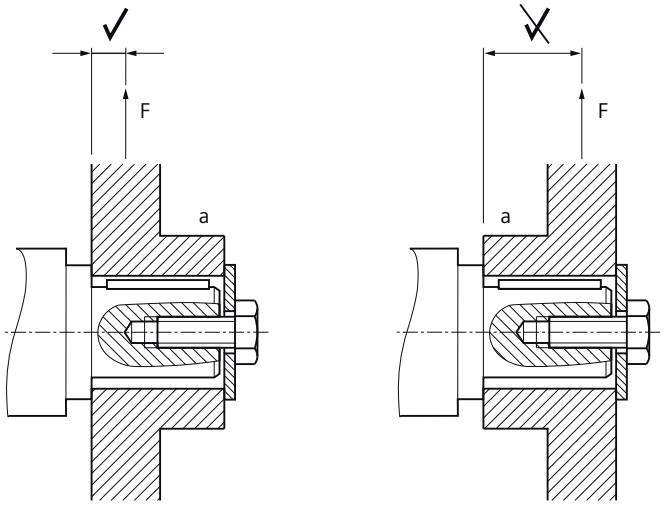


Figure 6-1 Example of a fitting device

Observe the correct mounting arrangement to minimize stress on shafts and bearings due to lateral forces.




✓ Correct

✗ Incorrect

a Hub

F Force

Figure 6-2 Mounting arrangement for low stress on shafts and bearings

**Procedure**

1. Use benzine or a solvent to remove the anti-corrosion protection from the shaft ends and flanges. Or remove the existing protective skin.
2. Fit the drive input and output elements to the shafts. Lock the elements.

You have now attached the input or output element.

## 6.9 Removing and installing the protection cover

**Ex-version gearboxes**

A damaged protection cover causes sparks. Replace damaged protection covers immediately.

Secure bolts ① with, e.g. Loctite 243 medium-strength adhesive.

The plastic cover is not Ex-compliant.

The protection cover of the hollow shaft is delivered ready-fitted to the gearbox flange. Dismantle the protection cover for installation of the output shaft.

The plastic protection cover of the hollow shaft is supplied loose as kit.

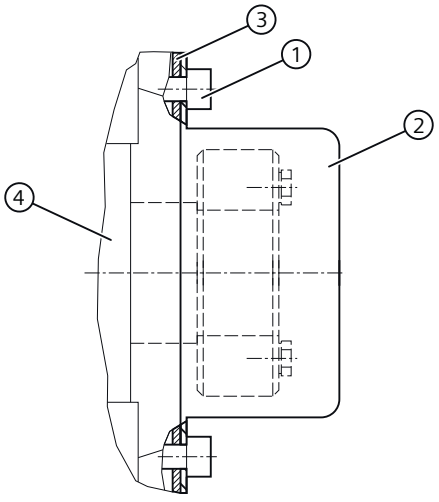



Figure 6-3 Protection cover for hollow shaft

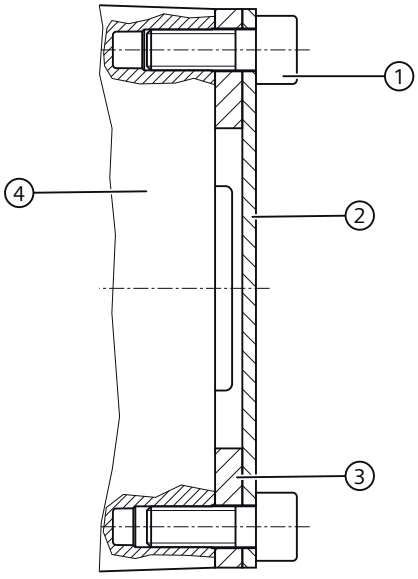



Figure 6-4 Protective cover for hollow shaft for worm geared motor S

① Screw
② Protection cover
③ Flat gasket/O-ring
④ Gearbox housing

## Procedure

**Premounted protection cover**

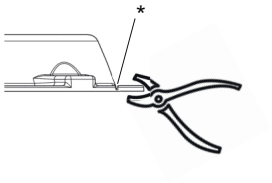
1. Loosen the screws ① and remove the protection cover ② together with the flat gasket or O-ring ③.
2. Mount the output shaft.
3. Use a suitable cleaning agent to clean the contact surface of the protection cover ② on the gearbox.
4. Ensure that the flat seal or the O-ring ③ is correctly seated.
5. Apply medium-strength adhesive, e.g. Loctite 243 to the screws ①.
6. Screw on the protection cover ②.
7. Protect all remaining bare areas with a suitable permanent anti-corrosive agent.

You have now installed the protection cover for operation.

**Protection cover (supplied loose)**

When using the plastic protection cover for gearbox F49, break the cover into the correct shape first.

When using the plastic protection cover for other gearboxes, it is not necessary to bring the cover into the required shape; in this case, start with Point 2.




* Preset breaking point

Figure 6-5 Preset breaking point for F49

1. F49: Break the cover at the preset breaking point, see diagram.
2. Mount the output shaft.
3. Use a suitable cleaning agent to clean the contact surface of the protection cover ② on the gearbox.
4. Ensure that the O-ring or flat seal ③ is correctly seated.
5. Screw on the protective cover ② with a tightening torque of 5-10 Nm.
6. Protect all remaining bare areas with a suitable permanent anti-corrosive agent.

You have now mounted the plastic protection cover for operation.

## 6.10 Mounting and removing the slip-on gearbox

### 6.10.1 General information on installing the shaft-mounted gearbox

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to shaft sealing rings caused by solvent** |
| Avoid any contact of solvent or benzine with the shaft sealing rings. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Subjecting stress to the hollow shaft causes bearing failure** |
| Skewing or stressing the hollow shaft increases the loading. This can cause bearing failure. |
| The hollow shaft must be flush with the machine shaft to avoid misalignment. |
| Do not subject the hollow shaft to axial and radial stress. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **For shrink disks:**<br>**Lubricants in the area between the hollow shaft and machine shaft impair torque transmission** |
| Keep the bore in the hollow shaft and the machine shaft completely grease-free. |
| Do not use impure solvents and soiled cleaning cloths. |

**Note**

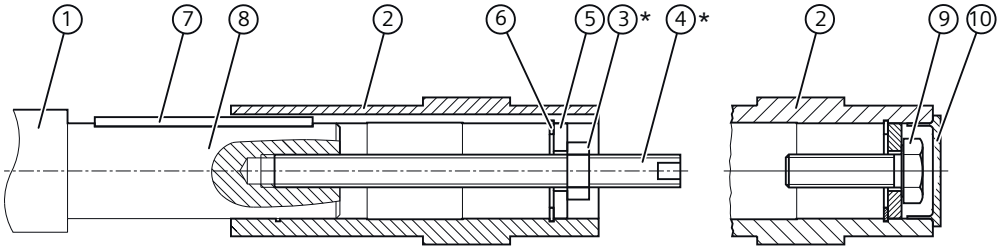
Coat the contact surfaces with the mounting paste supplied with the product or any suitable lubricant to prevent frictional corrosion.

**Note**

Observe the permissible concentricity tolerance of the cylindrical shaft extension of the machine shaft to the housing axle according to DIN 42955.

## 6.10.2 Hollow shaft with feather key

### 6.10.2.1 Mounting the hollow shaft with parallel key




* Not included in scope of supply

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ① | Machine shaft | ⑥ | Locking ring |
| ② | Hollow shaft | ⑦ | Parallel key |
| ③ | Hexagon nut | ⑧ | Mounting paste |
| ④ | Threaded spindle | ⑨ | Screw |
| ⑤ | Disk | ⑩ | Sealing cap |

Figure 6-6 Mounting the hollow shaft with parallel key

Instead of the nut and threaded spindle shown in the diagram, other types of equipment such as hydraulic lifting equipment may be used.

**Procedure**

1. Using benzine or a solvent, remove the anti-corrosion protection from the shaft ends and flanges.
2. Check the seats or edges of the hollow and machine shafts for any damage. Contact Technical Support if you notice any damage.
3. Apply the mounting paste provided ① to the machine shaft ⑧. Apply the paste uniformly. Carefully wipe away the rest at the shaft sealing ring of the gearbox.
4. Fit the gearbox using the disk ⑤, threaded spindle ④ and nut ③. Use the hollow shaft ② for support.

5. Replace the nut ③ and the threaded spindle ④ with a screw ⑨. Tighten the bolts ⑨ to the specified torque.
6. Close the open hollow shaft end using a sealing cap ⑩.

You have now mounted the hollow shaft with parallel key.

Table 6-6 Tightening torque for the screw

| Thread size | M5 | M6 | M8 | M10 | M12 | M16 | M20 | M24 | M30 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Tightening torque in Nm | 5 | 8 | 8 | 14 | 24 | 60 | 120 | 200 | 400 |

### 6.10.2.2 Removing the hollow shaft with parallel key

**⚠ WARNING**

**Inadequately fastened gearboxes or geared motors can break loose**

Before driving out the machine shaft, fasten an adequately dimensioned load suspension device to the gearbox.

Slightly pretension the pulling equipment so that the gearbox does not drop onto it when the insert shaft is released.

**NOTICE**

**Subjecting stress to the hollow shaft causes bearing failure**

Do not skew when withdrawing.

**NOTICE**

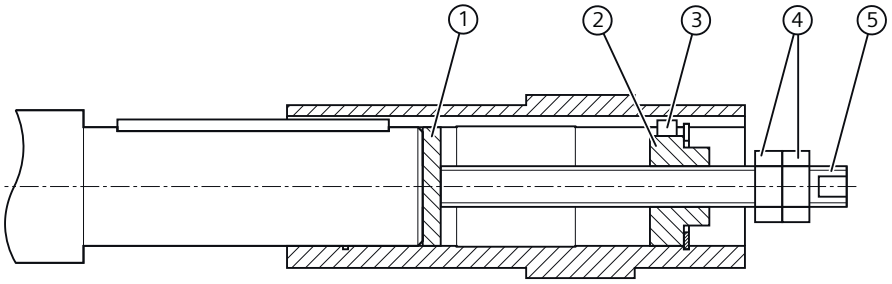
**Excessive forces during removal**

Excessive forces can occur when removing the hollow shaft via the housing.

Stresses in the hollow shaft can lead to bearing failure and damage to the gearbox housing.

**Note**

If frictional corrosion has occurred on the seat surfaces, use rust solvent to facilitate the removal of the gearbox. Allow the rust solvent to take effect.




Items ① to ⑤ are not included in the scope of supply.

① Disk
② Threaded block
③ Feather key
④ Hexagon nut
⑤ Leadscrew

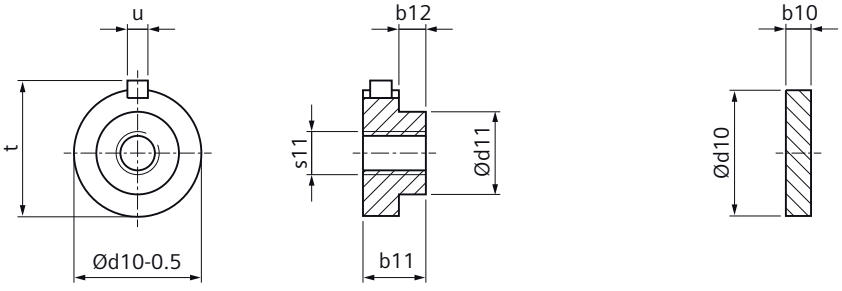
Figure 6-7 Removing the hollow shaft with parallel key

## Procedure

1. Remove the axial locking element from the hollow shaft.
2. Drive out the machine shaft using the disk ①, threaded block ②, feather key ③, threaded spindle ⑤ and hexagon nuts ④.

You have now removed the hollow shaft with fitted key.

### Design suggestion for threaded block and disk

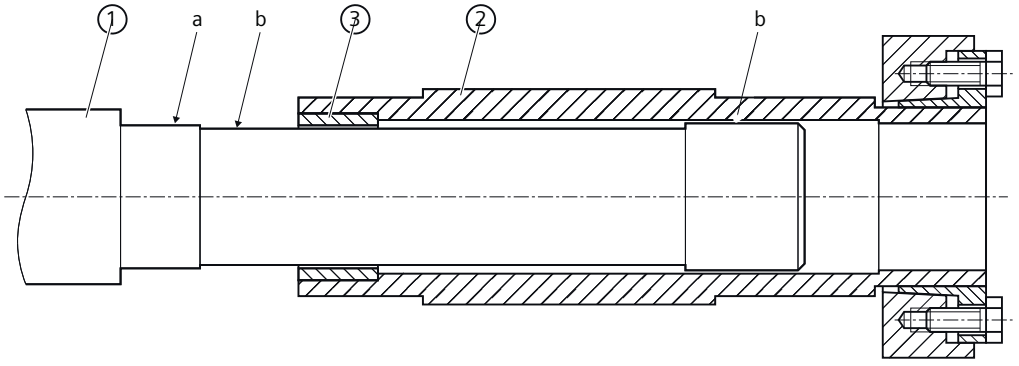



| Gearbox | Frame size | Hollow shaft Ø | b10 | b11 | b12 | d10 | d11 | s11 | $t_{max}$ | u |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm |
| S | 09 | | 3 | 5 | - | 15.9 | - | M6 | 8 | 5 |
| B | 19 | 20 | 3 | 15 | 10 | 19.9 | 10 | M6 | 22.5 | 6 |
| S | 19 | | 3 | 6 | - | 17.9 | - | M6 | 20.5 | 6 |
| B, C, S | 29 | 20 | 3 | 15 | 10 | 19.9 | 10 | M6 | 22.5 | 6 |
| S | 29 | | 3 | 15 | 10 | 24.9 | 14 | M8 | 28 | 8 |
| B, F | 29 | 25 | 3 | 15 | 10 | 24.9 | 16 | M10 | 28 | 8 |
| C | 39 | 25 | 3 | 15 | 10 | 24.9 | 16 | M10 | 28 | 8 |
| B, K, F, C | | 30 | 6 | 15 | 10 | 29.9 | 18 | M10 | 33 | 8 |
| B | | 35 | 6 | 15 | 10 | 34.9 | 24 | M12 | 38 | 10 |
| B | | 40 | 6 | 15 | 10 | 39.9 | 28 | M16 | 43 | 12 |

| Gearbox | Frame size | Hollow shaft Ø | b10 | b11 | b12 | d10 | d11 | s11 | $t_{max}$ | u |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm |
| C | 49 | 30 | 6 | 15 | 10 | 29.9 | 18 | M10 | 33 | 8 |
| K, F, C | | 35 | 6 | 15 | 10 | 34.9 | 24 | M12 | 38 | 10 |
| B | | 40 | 6 | 15 | 10 | 39.9 | 28 | M16 | 43 | 12 |
| K, F, C | 69 | 40 | 6 | 20 | 9 | 39.9 | 28 | M16 | 43 | 12 |
| C | | 45 | 6 | 20 | 9 | 44.9 | 36 | M16 | 48 | 14 |
| K, F | 79 | 40 | 6 | 20 | 9 | 39.9 | 28 | M16 | 43 | 12 |
| K, F, C | 89 | 50 | 7 | 20 | 10 | 49.9 | 36 | M16 | 53.5 | 14 |
| C | | 60 | 7 | 20 | 10 | 59.9 | 45 | M20 | 64 | 18 |
| K, F | 109 | 60 | 10 | 24 | 14 | 59.9 | 45 | M20 | 64 | 18 |
| K, F | 129 | 70 | 10 | 24 | 14 | 69.9 | 54 | M20 | 74.5 | 20 |
| K, F | 149 | 90 | 10 | 24 | 14 | 89.9 | 72 | M20 | 95 | 25 |
| K, F | 169 | 100 | 10 | 30 | 15 | 99.9 | 80 | M24 | 106 | 28 |
| K, F | 189 | 120 | 10 | 30 | 15 | 109.9 | 80 | M24 | 127 | 32 |

## 6.10.3 Hollow shaft with shrink disk

### 6.10.3.1 Mounting the hollow shaft with shrink disk




a Greased
b Absolutely grease-free
① Machine shaft
② Hollow shaft
③ Bushing

Figure 6-8 Mounting the hollow shaft with shrink disk

### Procedure

1. Using benzine or a solvent, remove the anti-corrosion protection from the shaft ends and flanges.
2. Check the seats or edges of the hollow and machine shafts for any damage. Contact Technical Support if you notice any damage.
3. Mount the gearbox with the shrink disk shaft onto the machine shaft. Carefully ensure the correct position and that the shrink disk seat completely covers the machine shaft.

You have mounted the hollow shaft with shrink disk.

## 6.10.3.2 Mounting the shrink disk

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Risk of injury due to freely rotating parts** |
| Fit a cover cap or protection cover. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Lubricants in the shrink disk seat impair torque transmission** |
| Keep the bore in the hollow shaft and the machine shaft completely grease-free. |
| Do not use impure solvents and soiled cleaning cloths. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Plastic deformation of the hollow shaft caused by tightening the tightening bolts** |
| Plastic deformation of the hollow shaft when tightening the tightening bolts before fitting the machine shaft. |
| First fit machine shaft. Then tighten the tightening bolts. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Avoid overloading the individual bolts** |
| Do not exceed the maximum tightening torque for the tightening bolt. |
| Frame sizes 19 - 69:<br>tighten clamping screws ⑥ |
| Frame sizes 79 - 189:<br>it is important that the face surfaces of the outer ring ④ and the inner ring ⑤ are flush with one another. If they are not flush with one another when fitting, check the tolerance of the plug-in shaft. |

**Note**

The shrink disk, item ③, is delivered ready for installation.

Do not disassemble it before the 1st fitting.

**Note**

The machine shaft material must comply with the following criteria in order to safely and reliably transfer the forces and torque:

- Yield point Re ≥ 360 N/mm$^2$
- Modulus of elasticity: approx. 206 kN/mm$^2$
- No face end thread in the machine shaft because it would reduce the transferred torque

**Note**

The shrink-fitted disc connection fastens the hollow shaft axially on the machine shaft.

**Note**

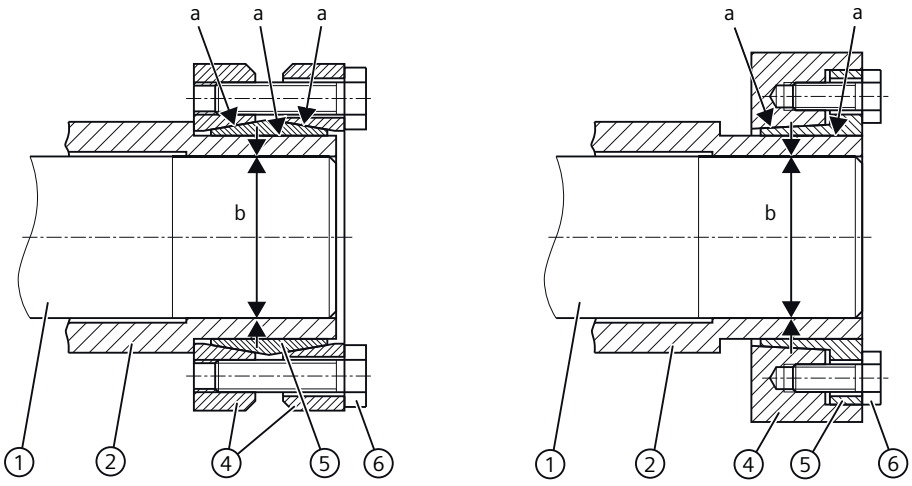
Apply a thin layer of grease to the shrink disk seat on the hollow shaft.

**Note**

Coat with a suitable lubricant to prevent frictional corrosion of the contact surface on the customer's machine shaft in the vicinity of the bush.

Sizes 19 - 69

Sizes 79 - 189




a Greased
b Absolutely grease-free
① Machine shaft
② Hollow shaft
③ Shrink disk comprising items ④ - ⑥
④ Outer ring
⑤ Inner ring
⑥ Tightening bolt

Figure 6-9 Mounting the shrink disk

## Procedure

1. Push the shrink disk ③ onto the hollow shaft ②.
   - 3-part shrink disk up to the end stop for frame sizes 19 - 69.
   - 2-part shrink disk flush with the shaft end for frame sizes 79 - 189.
2. Tighten the clamping bolts ⑥, initially by hand. Align the shrink disk ③ so that the clamping flanges are plane-parallel with one other.
3. Use the torque wrench to tighten each of the clamping screws ⑥ (not crosswise), repeating this procedure several times. Evenly tighten the clamping screws through 1/6 of a revolution. Comply with the tightening torque.
4. Attach the rubber cover or protection cover included in the scope of delivery, as in Chapter Removing and installing the protection cover (Page 54).

You have now installed the shrink disk.

Table 6-7 Tightening torque for the tightening bolt

| Gearbox size | Thread size | Strength class | Tightening torque |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Nm |
| 19, 29 | M5 | 10.9 | 5 |
| 39, 49, 69 | M6 | 10.9 | 12 |

| Gearbox size | Thread size | Strength class | Tightening torque |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Nm |
| 79, 89 | M8 | 12.9 | 35 |
| 109 | M10 | 12.9 | 70 |
| 129 | M10 | 12.9 | 70 |
| 149 | M12 | 12.9 | 121 |
| 169, 189 | M14 | 12.9 | 193 |

### 6.10.3.3 Pulling off the shrink disk

**Procedure**

1. Successively release the tightening bolts ⑥ one after the other through a ¼ turn each time using a wrench. Do not completely remove the bolts.
2. Pull the shrink disk off the hollow shaft.

Sizes 79 - 189:
If the outer ring does not come away from the inner ring, remove some of the tightening bolts and insert them into neighboring forcing threads.

Pull the shrink disk off the hollow shaft.

### 6.10.3.4 Cleaning and lubricating shrink disks

Soiled shrink disks must be cleaned and regreased prior to fitting.

Shrink disks that have been released need not be disassembled and regreased before being retensioned.

**Procedure**

1. Only grease the inner friction surfaces of the shrink disks. To do this, use a solid lubricant with a friction coefficient of μ = 0.04.
2. Use a paste containing $MoS_2$ to grease the bolts, applying the paste to the thread and underneath the head.

Clean the shrink disk.

Table 6-8 Lubricants for shrink disks

| Lubricant | Sold as | Manufacturer |
|---|---|---|
| Molykote 321 R (lubricant paint) | Spray | DOW Corning |
| Molykote spray (powder spray) | | |
| Molykote G Rapid | Spray or paste | |
| Molykombin UMFT 1 | Spray | Klüber Lubrication |
| Unimily P5 | Powder | |
| Aemasol MO 19 P | Spray or paste | A. C. Matthes |

## 6.10.4 SIMOLOC assembly system

### 6.10.4.1 General notes for the SIMOLOC assembly system

**⚠ WARNING**

**Risk of injury due to freely rotating parts**

Fit a cover cap or protection cover.

**NOTICE**

**Damaged components impair the correct function of the gearbox**

If any components are damaged, the correct function of the gearbox will no longer be ensured.

Do not install any damaged gearbox components.

**NOTICE**

**Lubricant on the machine shaft ① impairs the torque transmission**

Keep the bore in the tapered bushing ⑨ and the machine shaft ① completely grease-free.

Do not use impure solvents and soiled cleaning cloths.

**NOTICE**

**Avoid overloading the individual bolts**

Do not exceed the maximum tightening torque for the tightening bolts ④ und ⑩.

**Note**

The SIMOLOC assembly system secures the hollow shaft axially on the machine shaft.

**Note**

In the hollow shaft ⑥, oil the locating hole for the tapered bushing ⑨ and bronze bushing ② lightly with the provided oil.

Oil type of the provided oil: CLP VG 68 DIN 51517-3

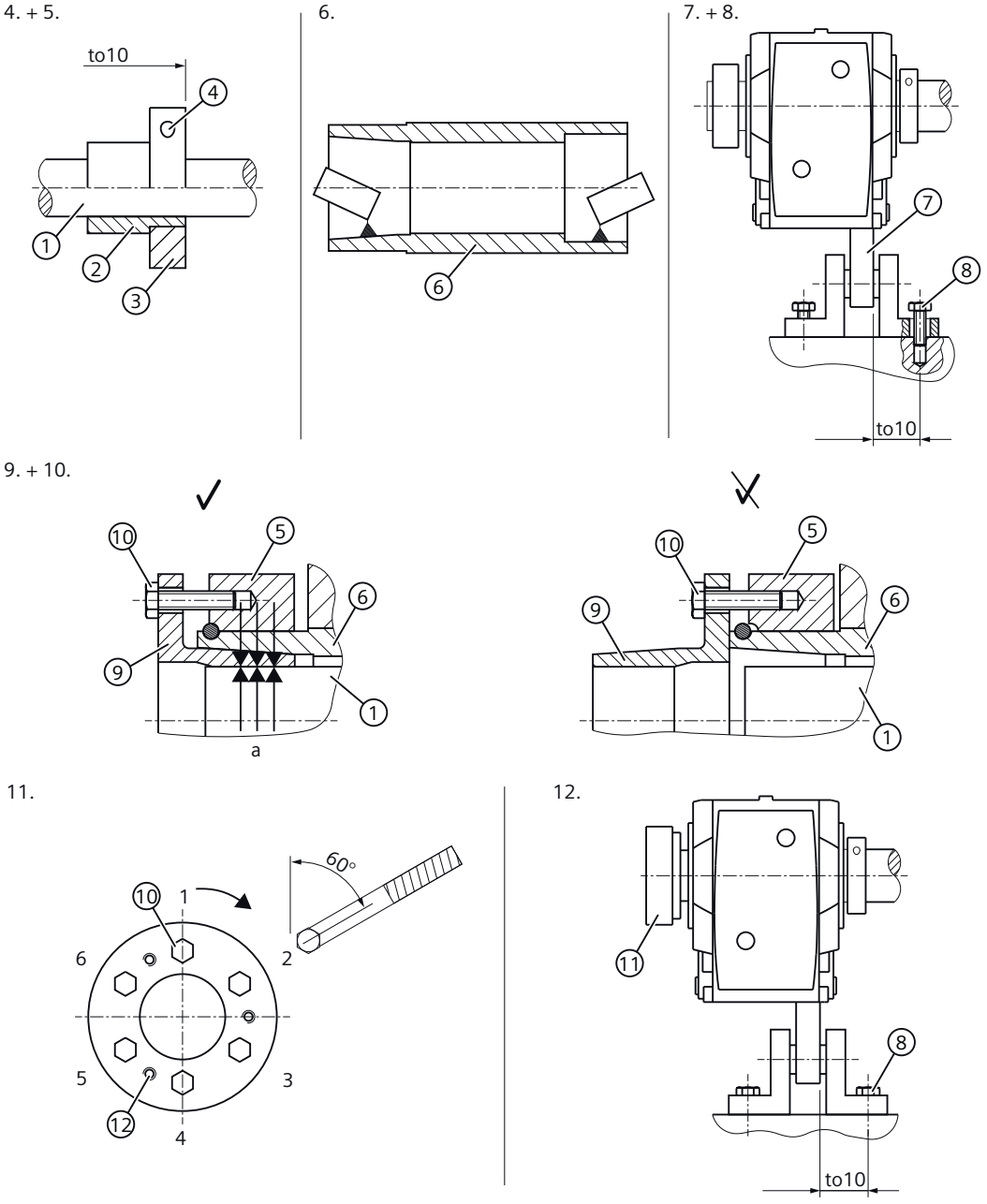
**Note**

The thrust collar ⑤ must be placed at the correct position as in the delivered state.

**Note**

Before installing the SIMOLOC, mount the torque arms ⑦ on the gearbox.

### 6.10.4.2 Installing SIMOLOC




| | |
|---|---|
| a | Absolutely grease-free |
| ① | Machine shaft |
| ② | Bronze bushing |
| ③ | Clamping ring |
| ④ | Tightening bolt for the clamping ring |
| ⑤ | Thrust collar |
| ⑥ | Hollow shaft |
| ⑦ | Torque arm |
| ⑧ | Screw |
| ⑨ | Tapered bushing |
| ⑩ | Tightening bolt for the tapered bushing |
| ⑪ | Protection cover / cover cap |
| ⑫ | Threaded hole for the tightening bolt ⑩ during disassembly |

Figure 6-10 Installing SIMOLOC

## Procedure

1. Attach the torque arm ⑦ to the gearbox, as shown in Torque arms for slip-on gearboxes (Page 70).
2. Remove the corrosion protection coating using white spirit or a solvent on:
   - The shaft ends of the machine shaft ①
   - The clamping ring ③
   - The bronze bushing ②.
3. Check the seats or edges of the hollow shaft ⑥ and the machine shaft ① for damage. Contact Technical Support if you notice any damage.
4. Place the clamping ring ③ on the bronze bushing ②.
5. Position the bronze bushing ② with the clamping ring ③ on the machine shaft ①. Observe the tightening torque of the tightening bolt ④ and the tolerance dimension to10.
6. Oil lightly the locating holes in the hollow shaft ⑥ for the tapered bushing ⑨ and bronze bushing ②. Remove any excessive oil using a clean cloth.
7. Push the gearbox with the installed torque arm ⑦ on the machine shaft ① against the clamping ring ③.
8. Tighten the torque arm ⑦ with the bolts ⑧ only gently because the gearbox must have clearance for the subsequent mounting.
9. Ensure that the thrust collar ⑤ is placed at the correct position.
   If the thrust collar ⑤ is not placed at the correct position, bring the ring ⑤ into the correct position by tightening the tightening bolts ⑩ with turned tapered bushing ⑨.
10. Place the tapered bushing ⑨ on the machine shaft ①.
11. Use the torque wrench to turn each of the tightening bolts ⑩ equally (not crosswise), repeating this procedure several times. Observe the tightening torque of the tightening bolt ⑩.
12. Tighten the bolts ⑧ of the torque-arm fastening, as shown in Torque arms for slip-on gearboxes (Page 70).
13. Attach the rubber cover or protection cover ⑪ included in the scope of delivery, as shown in Removing and installing the protection cover (Page 54).

You have installed the SIMOLOC assembly system.

Table 6-9 Tolerance dimension, tightening bolt ④ tightening torque

| Gearbox type | Size | Tolerance dimension to10 | Thread size ④ | Tightening torque |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | mm | Strength class 10.9 | Nm |
| F, B, C | 29 | 0.6 ... 2.1 | M6 | 15 |
| F, B, K, C | 39 | 0.7 ... 2.2 | | |
| F, B, K, C | 49 | 0.8 ... 2.6 | | |
| F, K, C | 69 | 0.7 ... 2.5 | M8 | 35 |
| F, K | 79 | 1.4 ... 3.2 | | |
| F, K, C | 89 | 1.5 ... 3.4 | | |

Table 6-10 Tightening bolt ⑩ tightening torque

| Gearbox type | Size | Thread size ⑩ | Tightening torque |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | Strength class 12.9 | Nm |
| F, B, C | 29 | M5 | 10 |
| F, B, K, C | 39 | | |
| F, B, K, C | 49 | M6 | 16 |
| F, K, C | 69 | | |
| F, K | 79 | M8 | 38 |
| F, K, C | 89 | | |

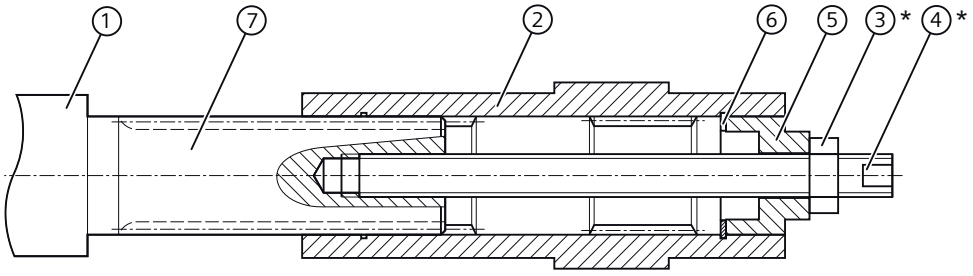
### 6.10.4.3 Removing SIMOLOC

#### Procedure

1. Remove all bolts ⑩ completely.
2. Screw the bolts ⑩ into the threaded holes ⑫.
3. Use the torque wrench to turn each of the bolts ⑩ equally (not crosswise), repeating this procedure several times. Observe the tightening torque of the bolt ⑩. Repeat the task until the tapered bushing ⑨ has been freed.
4. Unscrew the bolts ⑩ and remove the tapered bushing ⑨.
5. Lower the gearbox from the machine shaft ①.

You have removed the SIMOLOC assembly system.

## 6.10.5 Hollow shaft with splines




* Not included in scope of supply
① Machine shaft
② Hollow shaft
③ Hexagon nut
④ Threaded spindle
⑤ Disk
⑥ Locking ring
⑦ Mounting paste

Figure 6-11 Mounting the hollow shaft with splines

Instead of the nut and threaded spindle shown in the diagram, other types of equipment such as hydraulic lifting equipment may be used.

### Procedure

1. Using benzine or a solvent, remove the anti-corrosion protection from the shaft ends and flanges.
2. Check the seats or edges of the hollow and machine shafts for any damage. Contact Technical Support if you notice any damage.
3. Apply the mounting paste ⑦ to the machine shaft ①. Apply the paste uniformly.
4. Fit the gearbox using the disk ⑤, threaded spindle ④ and nut ③. Support is provided by the hollow shaft ②.
5. Replace the nut ③ and the threaded spindle ④ with a screw. Tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

You have mounted the hollow shaft with splined shaft.

Table 6-11 Tightening torque for the screw

| Thread size | M5 | M6 | M8 | M10 | M12 | M16 | M20 | M24 | M30 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Tightening torque in Nm | 5 | 8 | 8 | 14 | 24 | 60 | 120 | 200 | 400 |

## 6.10.6 Torque arms for slip-on gearboxes

### 6.10.6.1 General information regarding torque arms

Torque arms can absorb the reaction torque and the weight force of the gearbox.

**Ex-version gearboxes**
Worn or irreparably damaged rubber elements will not function properly.
Impact causes sparks
Immediately replace any damaged rubber elements.

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Dangerous transient torques due to excess backlash** |
| Take care to prevent the torque arm causing excessive constraining forces, e.g. due to the driven shaft running out-of-true. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Impermissible gearbox loading caused by incorrect mounting** |
| Do not tension torque arms when mounting. |
| The torque arm bush must be supported by bearings on both sides. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to the rubber elements caused by solvent** |
| Solvents, oils, greases, and fuels damage rubber elements. |
| Prevent contact. |

### 6.10.6.2 Mounting torque arms on parallel shaft gearboxes

We recommend using pretensioned, damping rubber elements.

Fixing accessories such as brackets, bolts, nuts, etc., are not included in the scope of supply.

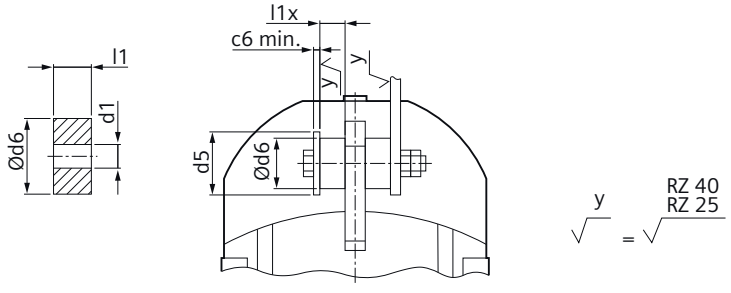



Figure 6-12 Installation suggestion for torque arms on F.29 - F.189

| Size | Rubber buffer | | | | Washer | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Unten-sioned | Tensioned | | | | |
| | l1 | l1x | d6 | d1 | d5 | $c6_{min}$ |
| | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm | mm |
| 29 | 15 | 14.0 | 30 | 10.5 | 40 | 4 |
| 39 | | 13.5 | | | | |
| 49 | 20 | 18.5 | 40 | 12.5 | 45 | 6 |
| 69 | | 18.5 | | | 50 | |
| 79 | | 17.5 | | | | |
| 89 | 30 | 28 | 60 | 21 | 75 | 8 |
| 109 | | 27.5 | | | | |
| 129 | 40 | 37.5 | 80 | 25 | 100 | 10 |
| 149 | | 36.5 | | | | |
| 169 | 50 | 47.5 | 120 | 31 | 140 | 12 |
| 189 | | 46.5 | | | | |

**Procedure**

1. Use the washers according to the table above.
2. Use two nuts to secure the screw connection (lock nuts).
3. Tighten the bolts until the rubber buffers are pretensioned to the dimension l1x.

You have now installed the torque arm.

### 6.10.6.3 Mounting torque arms on bevel gearboxes and helical worm gearboxes

| NOTICE |
|---|
| **Impermissible loading caused by incorrect mounting** |
| The torque arm bush must be supported by bearings on both sides. |
| After assembly, the sleeve must have some axial play. |

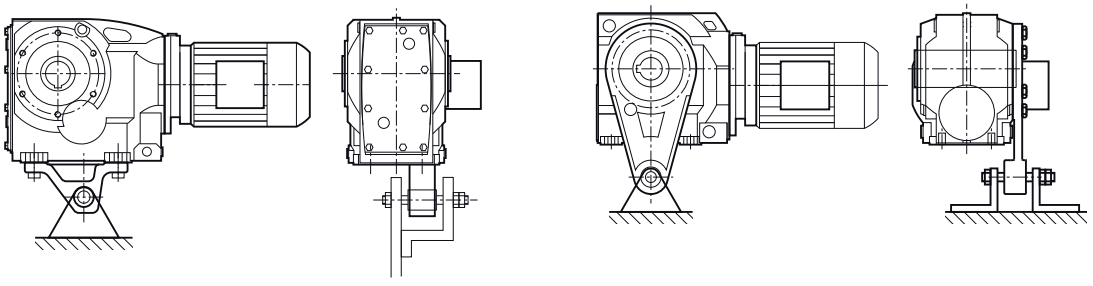


Figure 6-13 Mounting suggestion for torque arm on foot and flange

The torque arm can be fitted in various positions, depending on the hole circle pitch.

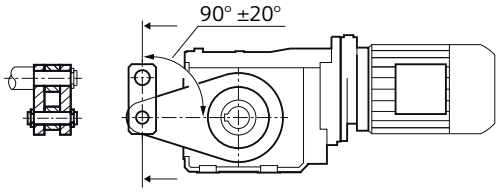



Figure 6-14 Toggle lever design

For a toggle lever design, derive the force in the range of 90° ±20°.

**Procedure**

1. Clean the contact surfaces between the housing and the torque arm.
2. Tighten the bolts to the specified torque.

You have now mounted the torque arm.

Table 6-12 Tightening torque for screws of strength class 8.8

| Thread size | M8 | M10 | M12 | M16 | M20 | M24 | M36 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Tightening torque in Nm | 25 | 50 | 90 | 210 | 450 | 750 | 2 600 |

### 6.10.6.4 Attaching the torque arm to worm geared motor S

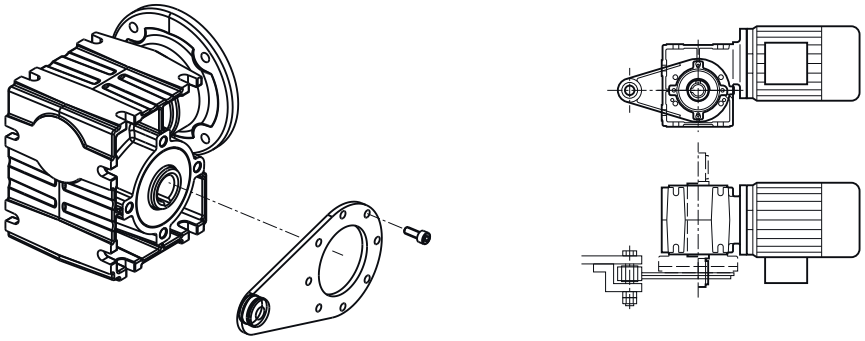


Figure 6-15 Attaching the torque arm

The torque arm can be mounted in various positions, depending on the hole circle pitch.

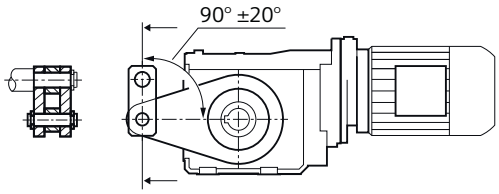



Figure 6-16 Toggle lever design

For a toggle lever design, derive the force in the range of 90° ±20°.

**Procedure**

1. Clean the contact surfaces between the housing and the torque arm.
2. Tighten the M6 screws to 10 Nm torque.

You have now mounted the torque arm.

# Commissioning 7

## 7.1 General information about commissioning

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Unintentional starting of the drive unit** |
| Secure the drive unit to prevent it from being started up unintentionally. |
| Attach a warning notice to the start switch. |

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Risk of slipping on oil** |
| Remove any oil spillage immediately with an oil-binding agent in compliance with environmental requirements. |

**Checking the pressure breather valve**

Check that the breather valve is activated.

If the breather valve has a transport fixture, it must be removed before commissioning.

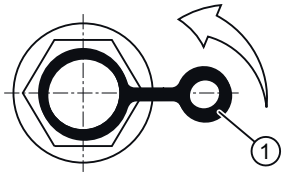



Figure 7-1 Pressure breather valve with securing clip

Remove the transport fixture by pulling the securing clip ① in the direction of the arrow.

## 7.2 Checking the oil level prior to commissioning

Check the oil level before commissioning. If necessary, correct the oil level.

Siemens recommends a complete oil change after a storage time longer than 24 months:

- For gearboxes with long-term preservation.
- For gearboxes supplied completely filled with oil.

Follow Checking and changing lubricants (Page 94).

**Gearbox in special mounting position**

The gearbox is intended for a specific rotation angle and is delivered with the correct quantity of oil for this purpose.

It is not possible to check the oil level. You will find information regarding oil quantity and type of oil on the rating plate.

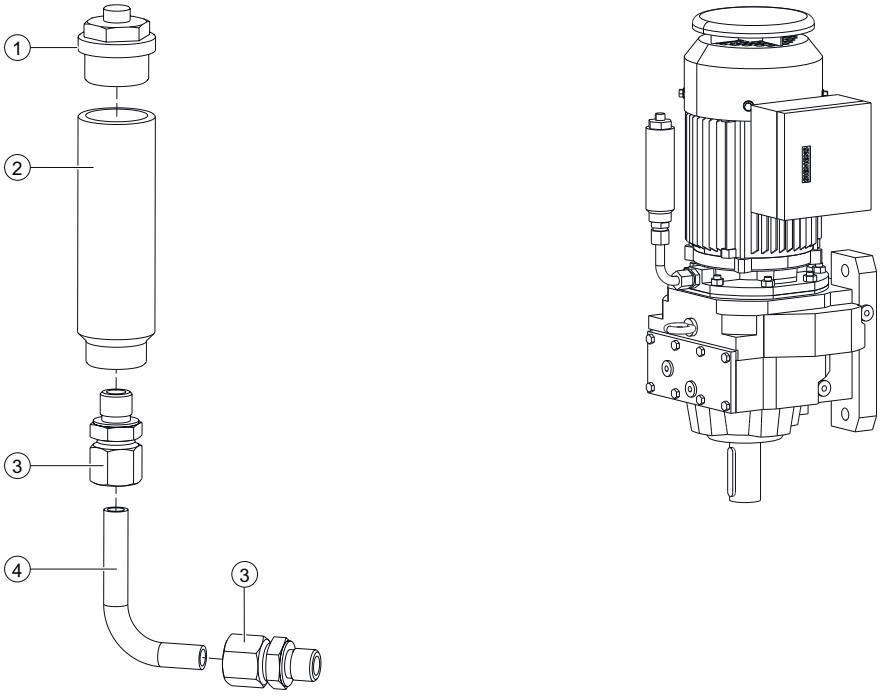
## 7.3 Mount the oil expansion unit

An oil expansion unit can be used depending on the power, drive speed, mounting position and transmission ratio. The oil expansion unit is used to equalize changes in the oil volume caused by temperature fluctuations in operation.

Before commissioning the gearbox, replace the screw plug with the oil expansion unit.

**Oil expansion unit size 39 - 89**

The unit is supplied as a mounting kit, and can be attached to the geared motor vertically or at an angle.




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ① | Pressure relief valve | ④ | Tube bend |
| ② | Unit | ⑤ | Screwed connection |
| ③ | Screwed joint | | |

Figure 7-2 Installing oil expansion unit size 39 - 89

**Procedure**

1. Assemble the mounting kit ① - ⑤.
2. Screw on the unit with the screwed connection ⑤ at the uppermost drill hole of the gearbox housing or of the motor bearing shield.
3. Align the oil expansion unit so that it is vertical. Aligning it at an angle of ±45° to the vertical is permissible if space is restricted.

**Oil expansion unit size 109 - 189**

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Hose with leaks** |
| The hose of the oil expansion unit is subject to a natural aging process. |
| Check the hose for tears or leaks. |
| Never commission a leaky hose. Replace the hose, if necessary. |
| The hose of the oil expansion unit is not suitable for ambient temperatures below -25 °C. |
| If the ambient temperatures differ, contact Technical Support. |

The unit is supplied as a mounting kit. The installation is described in the supplied Compact Installation Instructions KA 2530-1.

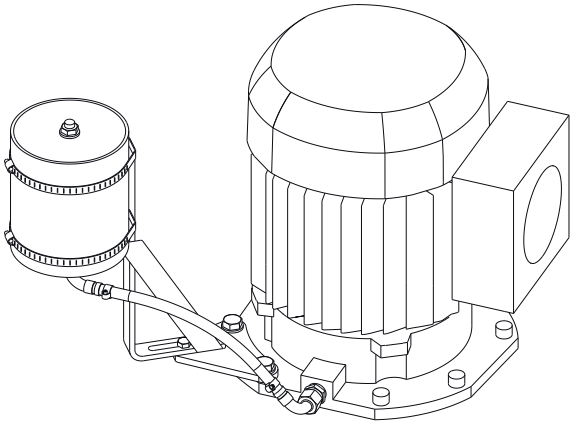


Figure 7-3 Example of an oil expansion unit size 109-189

## 7.4 Electrical oil level check (optional)

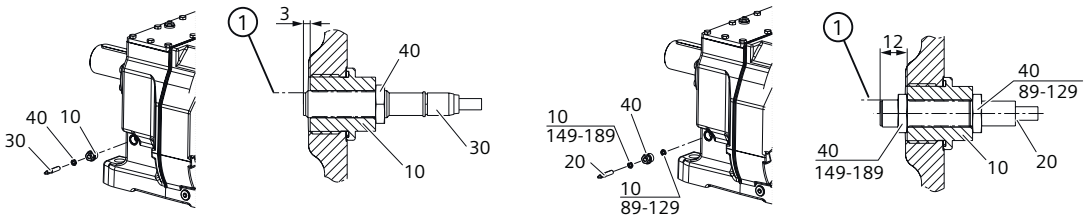
### 7.4.1 General information

The oil level is optionally checked by the oil level sensor when the gearbox is not running. An optional electrical oil level control during operation can lead to incorrect information.

The oil level sensor is screwed in instead of the oil check screw and is premounted at the factory. The position of the oil check screw can be found in Chapter Mounting positions (Page 137).

### 7.4.2 Mounting the oil level control

Standard Ex




① Oil level
10 Reduction G3/8" or G3/4"
20 Encoder IMP CJ1-12GK-N for hazardous areas
30 Encoder IMP CBB4-12GH70-E2 for non-hazardous areas
40 Hexagon nut M12x1

Figure 7-4 Mounting the sensor for oil level control

**Procedure before commissioning or after oil change with sensor installed in the factory**

Before commissioning the gearbox, check the functionality of the capacitive oil level monitoring system.

Function test:

1. Connect capacitive sensor.
2. Drain oil at the oil drain plug or oil drain valve until the capacitive sensor outputs a switching signal which indicates "Fault". Collect the drained oil in the process.
3. Stop draining the oil and fill the collected oil back into the gearbox.
4. The "Fault" must be eliminated after refilling. The oil level is correct.

You have mounted the capacitive sensor.

**⚠ CAUTION**

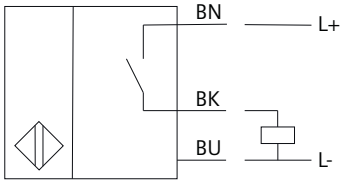
**Functional restriction of the sensor**

Carefully comply with the following:

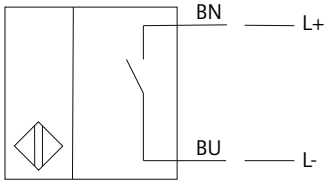
- Do not damage the cables or the insulation.
- Lay the supply line with strain relief.
- Avoid strong bending loads, buckling and point mechanical loads.

**Connection**

Non-hazardous area




Hazardous area



**Ex-version gearboxes**

Only use the oil level sensor for hazardous areas in combination with the disconnector.

The disconnector must be approved for the Ex-version.

Install the disconnector outside the hazardous area.

Comply with the operating instructions of the disconnector.

## 7.5 Electrical oil temperature monitoring (optional)

### 7.5.1 General information

The oil temperature is optionally monitored by the Pt100 resistance thermometer.

The oil temperature monitor is positioned in the area of the gearbox oil sump. The sensor pocket (item 1476) of the thermometer is screwed into the gearbox at the factory and closed with a sealing cap. Final assembly is carried out by the operator.

**Technical specifications of the sensor**

- Explosion protection type: II 2G Ex ia IIC Gb, II 2D Ex ia IIIC Db
- Protection class IP68
- 3-wire input
- Supply line of the sensor: S3x22/7-PTFE/PTFE, 0.36 $mm^2$, 2000 mm long, WH (RD/RD/WH), external diameter 3.8 mm, free ends
- Sensor ambient temperature: -40° C to +180° C
- Sensor pocket ambient temperature: -40° C to +125° C

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Permissible temperature limit**

The thermal limit temperature is 90° C oil sump temperature. This ensures a sufficient safety distance from the maximum permissible surface temperature.

## 7.5.2 Mounting the oil temperature monitor

The cable gland ②, ③, ④ is threaded onto the sensor cable ⑤.

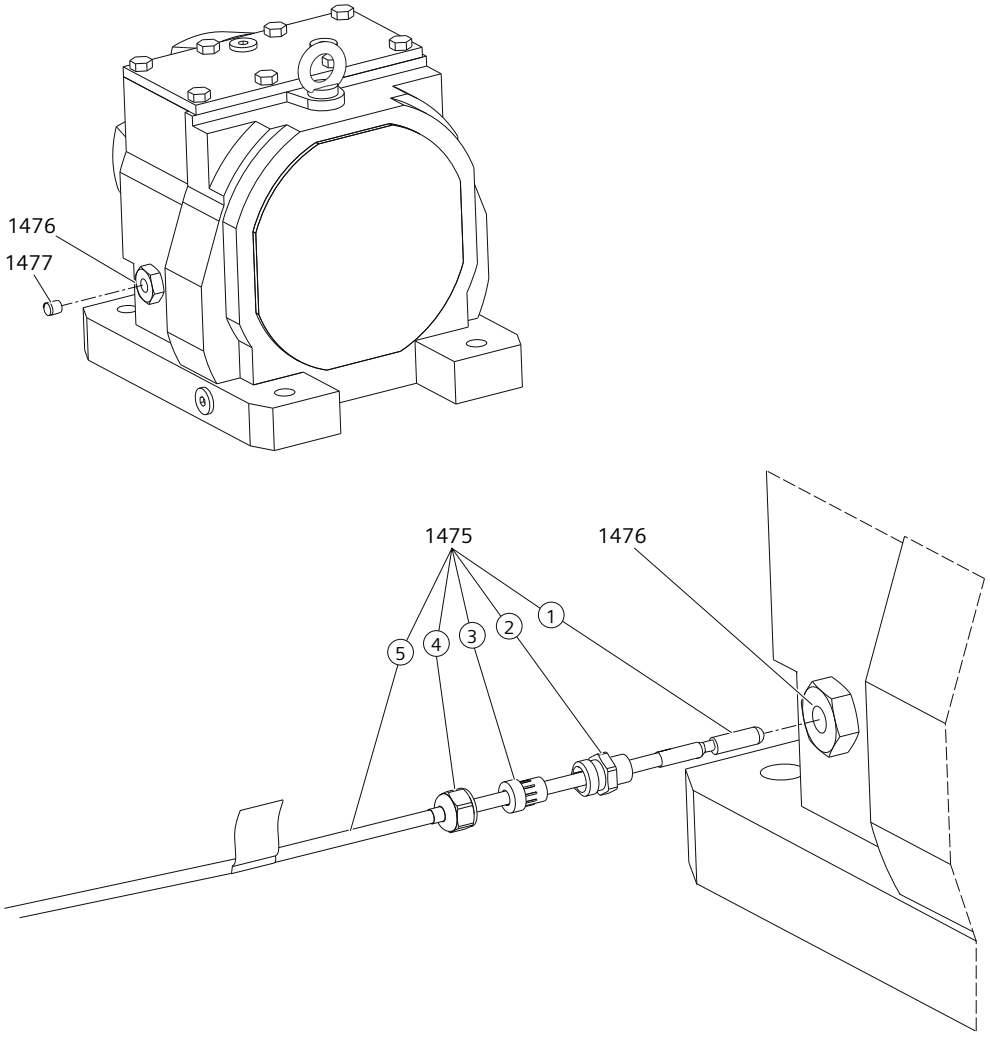



Figure 7-5 Mounting the sensor for oil temperature monitoring

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1475 | Resistance thermometer consisting of ①, ②, ③, ④, ⑤ | ② | Intermediate connectors |
| 1476 | Sensor pocket | ③ | Sealing element |
| 1477 | Sealing cap | ④ | Screw-down nut |
| ① | Sensor | ⑤ | Sensor cable |

**Procedure**

1. Remove the sealing cap 1477 from the sensor pocket 1476.
2. Unscrew the cable gland ②, ③, ④ on the sensor cable ⑤.
3. Carefully insert the sensor ① completely into the sensor pocket 1476 until it reaches the bottom of the bore hole.

4. Screw the intermediate socket ② into the bore hole of the sensor pocket 1476 with AF11 and 4 Nm tightening torque.
5. Insert the sealing element ③ into the intermediate socket ②.
6. Tighten the screw-down nut ④ with AF11 and 4 Nm tightening torque.

You have mounted the sensor for oil temperature monitoring.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Functional restriction of the sensor**

Carefully comply with the following:

- Threads, bore holes and sensor ① must be free of any dirt and residues.
- The sensor cable ⑤ must not rotate when the screw-down nut ④ is tightened.
- The sensor ① must be inserted completely, approx. 29 mm, in the sensor pocket 1476.
- Do not damage the cables or the insulation.
- Lay the supply line with strain relief.
- Avoid strong bending loads, buckling and point mechanical loads.

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

Comply with DIN EN 60079-14 when mounting and installing the sensor.

Circuitry of the connections according to EN 60751.

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

Operate the Pt100 resistance thermometer with a disconnector.

The disconnector must be approved for the Ex-version.

The disconnector is installed outside the hazardous area.

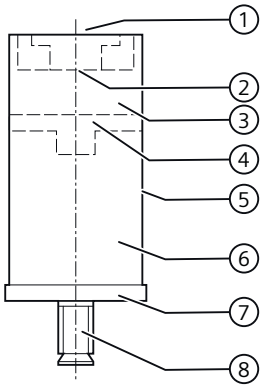
Comply with the operating instructions of the disconnector.

## 7.6 Options of the VLplus heavy-duty bearing system

### 7.6.1 Automatic regreasing device

Gearboxes with the VLplus heavy-duty bearing system can be optionally supplied with an automatic regreasing system.

The automatic regreasing device can be mounted in any position and can be used underwater.




① Lubrication time controller
② Pressure generator
③ $H_2$ gas
④ Pressure piston
⑤ Transparent housing
⑥ Rolling bearing grease
⑦ Unit floor
⑧ Connection thread

Figure 7-6 Automatic regreasing device

Table 7-1 Technical data

| | |
|---|---|
| Grease fill quantity | 125 ml |
| Adjustable lubrication duration | 0 ... 12 months |
| Permissible ambient temperature | -20° C ... +55° C |
| Max. operating pressure | 3 bar |
| Pressure generator | Hydrogen gas generating cell |
| Recommended storage temperature | +20° C |
| Usage period | Within 2 years of the filling date |
| Weight including grease fill | Approx. 190 g |

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Closed lubricator bursts**

Overpressure will result if the lubricator is not opened and the grease channels are contaminated. At an overpressure of approximately 5 bar, the lubricator will burst at the preset breaking point between the housing and the funnel.

Open the lubricator before commissioning.

Press fresh grease into blocked channels with a grease gun.

**Note**

Fill the lubricant channels and bearings with grease before installing the lubricator.

## Procedure

1. Clean the area around the connection thread of the greasing point.
2. Use a knife to cut off the seal at the lubricator outlet. Or remove the screw plug.

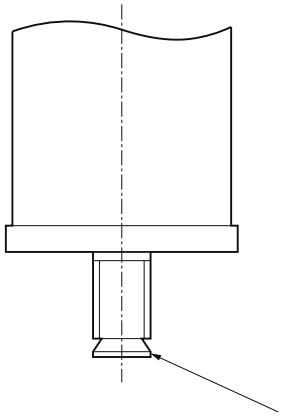


Figure 7-7 Sealing the lubricator

3. Screw the lubricator into the connection thread.

You have mounted the automatic regreasing system.

### Setting the lubrication time

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Setting the wrong lubrication time**

The lubrication time is heavily influenced by the resistance in the lubricant channels and the ambient temperature.

Check the actual lubrication time during operation.

The actual lubrication time is the time it takes for the lubricator to be completely emptied. The lubrication time is influenced by the resistance in the lubricant channels and the ambient temperature.

At an ambient temperature of -10° C, the actual lubrication time is twice that for the set temperature.

At an ambient temperature of +40° C, the actual lubrication time drops to approximately half that for the set temperature.

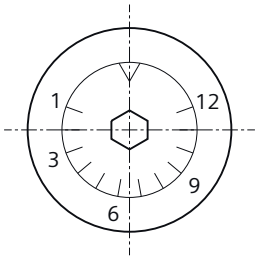



Figure 7-8 Lubrication time controller

**Procedure**

1. Set the lubrication time using a 3 mm Allen key.
2. Note the date of commissioning and the lubrication time on the lubricator.

You have set the lubrication time controller.

The times in months listed in the table are guide values.

Table 7-2 Timing in months on the lubrication time controller

| **Size** | **89** | **109** | **129** | **149** | **169** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Months | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 | 11 |

## 7.6.2 Dry-well version with oil sensor

Comply with the separate operating instructions for the oil level sensor.

The oil sensor can also be deployed for Ex-version gearboxes.

**Ex-version gearboxes**
The oil sensor operates with a disconnector.
The disconnector must be approved for the Ex-version.
The disconnector is installed outside the hazardous area.
Comply with the operating instructions of the disconnector.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Functional restriction of the sensor**

Carefully comply with the following:

- The sensor must be free of any dirt and residues.
- Do not damage the cables or the insulation.
- Lay the supply line with strain relief.
- Avoid strong bending loads, buckling and point mechanical loads.

# Operation

# 8

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

The difference between the temperature of the housing and the ambient temperature of max. +40° C must not exceed 70 K.

If the ambient temperatures differ, contact Technical Support.

Using a suitable temperature sensor, measure the temperature at the lowest point of the housing (oil sump) or at the mounting surface in the case of output units. We recommend that you monitor the gearbox temperature indirectly by monitoring the motor current.

Changes are an indication of possible incipient damage.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Malfunctions can cause injuries or gearbox damage**

In the event of changes during operation, the drive unit must be switched off immediately.

Determine the cause of the fault using the fault table (Page 87). Remedy faults or have faults remedied.

Check the gearbox or the geared motor during operation for:

- Excessive operating temperature
- Smooth and vibration-free operation
- Changes in gear noise
- Possible oil leakage at the housing and shaft seals

# Faults, causes and remedies

# 9

**Note**

Faults and malfunctions that occur during the warranty period and requiring repair work on the gearbox must be remedied only by Technical Support. If faults occur without a clearly identifiable cause after the warranty period has elapsed, Siemens recommends the services provided by Technical Support.

If you need the help from the Technical Support, please have the following information ready:

- Rating plate data
- Nature and extent of the fault
- Suspected cause

Table 9-1 Faults, causes and remedies

| Faults | Causes | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Unusual noise on the gearbox. | Oil level too low. | Check the oil level (Page 94). |
| | Foreign bodies in the oil (irregular noise). | Checking the oil quality (Page 103). Cleaning the gearbox or geared motor (Page 115). Change the oil (Page 94). |
| | Excessive bearing play and / or bearing defective. | Check the bearings, possibly replace. |
| | Defective gearing. | Check the gearing, possibly replace. |
| | Fastening bolts loose. | Checking tightness of fastening bolts (Page 116). |
| | Excessive external load on the drive input and output. | Check the load against rated data (you might need to correct the belt tension, for example). |
| | Transport damage. | Check the gearbox for damage in transit. |
| | Damage due to blockage during commissioning. | Call Technical Support. |
| Unusual noise from the drive unit. | Drive unit bearing not lubricated (motor size 160 and higher). | Regrease bearing (Page 107). |
| | Excessive bearing play and / or bearing defective. | Check the bearings, possibly replace. |
| | Fastening bolts loose. | Checking tightness of fastening bolts (Page 116). |
| Unusual motor noise. | Excessive bearing play and / or bearing defective. | Check the bearings, possibly replace. |
| | Motor brake is rubbing. | Check the air gap, possibly readjust |
| | Inverter parameterization. | Correct the parameterization. |

| Faults | Causes | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Oil escapes. | Incorrect oil level for the mounting position being used. | Check the mounting position (Page 137) and the oil level (Page 94). |
| | Gearbox leaks. | Checking the gearbox for leaks (Page 114). |
| | Overpressure due to lack of venting. | Install the venting as appropriate for the mounting position (Page 137). |
| | Overpressure due to soiled venting. | Clean the venting (Page 114). |
| | Shaft sealing rings defective. | Replace the shaft sealing rings. |
| | Cover / flange bolts loose. | Checking tightness of fastening bolts (Page 116). Continue to monitor the gearbox. |
| | Surface sealing defective (e.g. on cover, flange). | Reseal. |
| | Damage in transit (e.g. hairline cracks). | Check the gearbox for damage in transit. |
| Oil leak at the gearbox vent | Incorrect oil level for the mounting position used and / or incorrect venting position. | Check the venting position, mounting position (Page 137) and the oil level (Page 94). |
| | Frequent cold starts during which the oil foams up. | Call Technical Support. |
| Gearbox overheats. | Motor fan cover and / or gearbox very dirty. | Clean the fan cover and surface of the geared motor (Page 115). |
| | Incorrect oil level for the mounting position being used. | Check the mounting position (Page 137) and the oil level (Page 94). |
| | Incorrect oil being used (e.g. incorrect viscosity). | Checking the oil quality (Page 103). |
| | Oil is too old. | Check the date of last oil change. Possibly change the oil (Page 94). |
| | Excessive bearing play and / or bearing defective. | Check the bearings, possibly replace. |
| | Coolant temperature outside the permissible range. | Adjust the cooling air to the right temperature |
| Output shaft does not turn when the motor is running. | Force flow interrupted by breakage in gearbox. | Call Technical Support. |
| Geared motor only starts with difficulty or not at all. | Incorrect oil level for the mounting position being used. | Check the mounting position (Page 137) and the oil level (Page 94). |
| | Incorrect oil being used (e.g. incorrect viscosity). | Checking the oil quality (Page 103). |
| | Excessive external load on the drive input and output. | Check the load against rated data (you might need to correct the belt tension, for example). |
| | Motor brake is not released. | Check the circuit / connection of the brake. Check brake for wear and readjust if necessary. |
| | Geared motor runs against backstop. | Change the direction of motor or backstop rotation. |

| Faults | Causes | Remedy |
|---|---|---|
| Excessive play at drive input and output. | Flexible elements worn (e.g. on couplings). | Replace flexible elements. |
| | Positive connection disrupted by overload. | Call Technical Support. |
| Speed and torque drop. | Belt tension too low (for belt drive). | Check the belt tension, possibly replace the belt. |

# Service and maintenance

# 10

## 10.1 General notes about maintenance work

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

All measures, checks, and their results must be documented by the operator and records kept in a safe place for 10 years.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unintentional starting of the drive unit**

Secure the drive unit to prevent it from being started up unintentionally.

Attach a warning notice to the start switch.

**NOTICE**

**Improper maintenance**

Only authorized qualified personnel may perform the maintenance and servicing. Only install original parts supplied by Siemens.

**Note**

Worm gearbox S is lubricated for life.

Worm gearbox S does not require lubricant to be changed.

Only qualified personnel may perform the inspection, maintenance and servicing work. Comply with the information in Chapter Specific safety instructions (Page 27).

Table 10-1 Maintenance measures

| Remedy | Interval | Description of work |
|---|---|---|
| Monitor and check the geared motor for unusual noise, vibrations, and changes. | Daily; if possible, more frequently during operation. | Operation (Page 85) |
| Check the housing temperature. | After 3 hours, on the first day, thereafter monthly. | |
| Check the bearings for bearing noise | Every 3 000 operating hours, or at least every 6 months. | |
| Check the oil level. | After the first day, and then every 3,000 operating hours, or at the latest after 6 months. | Checking and changing lubricants (Page 94) |
| Check the oil level sensor | Regularly and after oil changes. | Checking the oil level sensor (optional) (Page 115) |

| Remedy | Interval | Description of work |
|---|---|---|
| Check the oil quality. | Every 6 months. | Checking the oil quality (Page 103) |
| Change the oil. | Every 2 years or 10,000 operating hours [1]. | Checking and changing lubricants (Page 94) |
| Visual inspection of the gearbox and shaft sealing ring for leakage. | After the first day, thereafter monthly. | Checking the gearbox for leaks (Page 114) |
| Possibly replace the vent valve. | Once a year. | Replacing the vent valve (Page 114) |
| Cleaning the gearbox or geared motor. | Depending on degree of soiling, at least every 6 months. | Cleaning the gearbox or geared motor (Page 115) |
| Carry out a complete inspection of the geared motor. | Every 12 months. | Inspecting the gearbox (Page 116) |
| Check the friction clutch, possibly readjust. | After 500 hours, thereafter once a year and after every blockage. | Comply with the BA 2039 operating instructions. |
| Check the flexible claw coupling. | For the first time after 3 years, then annually. | Comply with the BA 2039 operating instructions. |
| Check that fastening bolts on gearboxes and add-on elements are securely tightened. Check that covers and plugs are securely fastened. | After 3 hours, and then every 2 years. | Checking tightness of fastening bolts (Page 116) |
| Change the rolling bearing grease. | When the oil is changed. | Change the roller bearing grease (Page 107) |
| Replace the bearing. | - | Replace bearings (Page 114) |
| Check the rubber buffer of the torque arms. | Every 6 months. | Torque arms for slip-on gearboxes (Page 70) |
| Check the hose of the oil expansion unit. | Check regularly, renew every 4 years at the latest. | Replacing the hose of the oil expansion unit (Page 117) |
| Lubricate the XLplus and VLplus heavy-duty bearing systems. | - | Lubrication of the XLplus and VLplus heavy-duty bearing systems (Page 112) |
| Check that the paint coating is undamaged. | Every 6 months | Surface treatment (Page 36) |
| Check that the ground connection is firmly connected. | Every 6 months | See SIMOTICS XP 1MB1 explosion-protected motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/de/en/view/109757981) and SIMOTICS XP 1MB..5/6 explosion-protected motors (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109763259) |

[1] The intervals can be doubled when using synthetic oils. The data specified is valid for an oil temperature of +80° C. See the figure titled "Guide values for oil change intervals" for the intervals for other temperatures.

## 10.2 Parts subject to wear

**Gear teeth**

When carefully complying with dimensioning guidelines and maintenance intervals, after running-in, the gearing of the gearboxes and geared motors is almost wear-free. Worm gearing is an exception as a result of its inherent design. Depending on the operating conditions, the flanks of worm gear teeth can exhibit differing levels of wear, which is influenced by:

- Input speed
- Load level
- Operating temperature
- Lubricant
- Operating mode and switching frequency

**Rolling bearings**

Rolling bearings have a finite life even in ideal operating conditions.

The calculated nominal bearing life is 90 % of the achievable service life. The bearing life depends on the following:

- Input speed
- Bearing load level
- Operating temperature
- Lubricant and supply of lubricant to the rolling bearing
- Maintenance

Rolling bearings must be regularly checked. Comply with the information in Chapter General notes about maintenance work (Page 91).

**Lubricants**

Depending on the application conditions, lubricants have a limited service life as they are subject to natural aging. The oil service life especially depends on the oil sump temperature. Refer to Chapter Service life of the lubricants (Page 108) for guide values relating to oil change intervals. In the case of different operating conditions, contact Technical Support.

**Shaft sealing rings**

High quality radial shaft sealing rings are used to seal the oil space in the gearboxes. The shaft sealing rings prevent lubricant from escaping from the housing at the shaft outlet and prevent contaminants from entering the housing. The radial shaft sealing ring is provided with an additional protective lip to protect against contaminants from outside. The influencing factors are:

- Speed and peripheral velocity at the sealing lip
- Ambient conditions (temperature, dust, moisture, pressure, chemicals, radiation)
- Type of seal
- Seal material

- Lubricant
- Surface quality of the sealing location
- Lubricant supply at the sealing location

Predicting the service life is not possible as a result of the various influencing factors, and depends on the application conditions. Radial shaft sealing rings must be regularly checked to ensure that they are leak-tight. Comply with the information in Chapter General notes about maintenance work (Page 91).

**Cam ring / coupling ring**

Gearboxes with adapter for mounting standard motors, in versions K2, K3, KQ, KS, K8, are equipped with torsionally flexible couplings to transmit force and dampen torsional oscillation. Shock and torsional oscillation are dampened by the annular gear between the coupling hubs. The service life of the annular gear depends on various factors:

- Operating conditions (operating temperature, chemicals)
- Application conditions (amount of shock, starting behavior, service factor)

Comply with the inspection intervals specified in Chapter General notes about maintenance work (Page 91).

## 10.3 Checking and changing lubricants

### 10.3.1 General safety notes

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Danger of scalding from the hot oil emerging from the unit** |
| Before starting any work wait until the oil has cooled down to below +30 °C. |

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Risk of slipping on oil** |
| Remove any spilt oil immediately with an oil-binding agent in compliance with environmental requirements. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to the gearbox caused by incorrect oil quantities** |
| The oil quantity and the position of the sealing elements are determined by the mounting position. |
| After removing the oil level screw, the oil level may not be below the specified fill level. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to the gearbox due to open oil holes** |
| Dirt and damaging atmosphere can penetrate through open oil holes. |
| Close the gearbox immediately after checking the oil level or changing the oil. |

**Note**

**Information about oil**

Refer to the rating plate for the type of oil, oil viscosity and quantity of oil required.

For oil compatibility, see Recommended lubricants (Page 109).

**Note**

**Gearbox sizes 19 and 29**

Gearbox sizes 19 and 29 are lubricated for life. There is no opening to check the oil level. An oil change is not required.

In mounting positions M2 and M4 the gearboxes are equipped with a breather valve.

C29 has a breather valve in all mounting positions.

**Note**

**Tandem gearbox - intermediate helical gearbox**

- In a horizontal operating position the bulging part of the housing of the intermediate helical gearbox generally faces vertically downwards.
- The oil quantity is specified for every individual gearbox and is valid for the standard mounting position.
- Perform the following work for each individual gearbox:
  - Check the oil level.
    On the main gearbox D/Z, it is not possible to check the oil level in mounting position M4. The oil level is above the oil level bore so that the bearings above it are lubricated.
  - Check the oil quality.
  - Change the oil.
  - Fill in oil and top it up.

**Note**

**Gearbox in special mounting position**

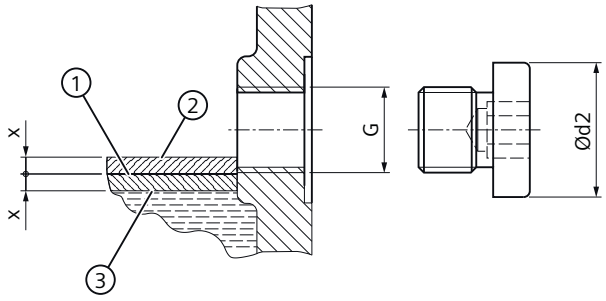
The gearbox is intended for a specific rotation angle and is delivered with the correct quantity of oil for this purpose.

It is not possible to check the oil level. You will find information regarding oil quantity and type of oil on the rating plate.

When draining the oil a higher residual quantity of oil may remain in the gearbox. When you carry out an oil change remove any residual oil.

## 10.3.2 Checking the oil level

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **The gearbox oil volume changes depending on the temperature**<br>If the temperature rises, the volume increases. Where temperature differences and filling quantities are significant, the volume difference can amount to several liters.<br>The oil level must therefore be checked while still slightly warm, approximately 30 minutes after switching off the drive unit. |




① Specified oil level
② Maximum oil level
③ Minimum oil level

Figure 10-1 Oil level in the gearbox housing

Table 10-2 Minimum and maximum fill levels x

| Oil level hole | Ød2 | Fill level x | Tightening torque |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| | mm | mm | Nm |
| G 1/8" | 14 | 2.5 | 10 |
| G 1/4" | 18 | 3 | 10 |
| G 3/8" | 22 | 4 | 25 |
| G 3/4" | 32 | 7 | 50 |

### Procedure

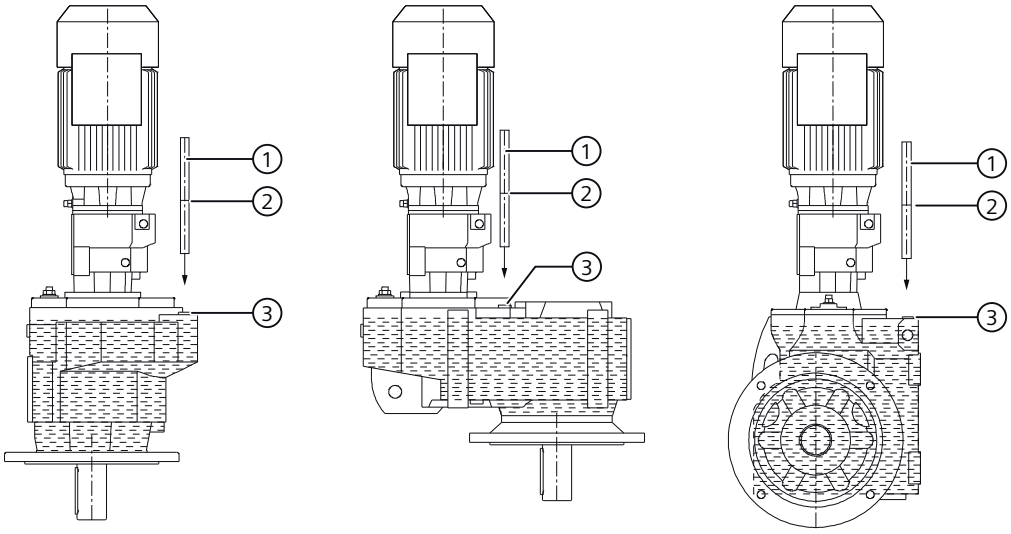
1. Switch off the power supply to the drive unit.
2. Unscrew the oil level screw, see Mounting positions (Page 137). Oil escapes if the maximum fill level is above the plug hole.
3. Check the oil level. Observe the fill level x.
4. Top up the oil level if necessary and check it again.
5. Check the state of the sealing ring on the sealing element. If the sealing ring is damaged, replace the sealing element with a new one.
6. After checking, seal the gearbox immediately using the sealing element.

You have now checked the oil level in the gearbox housing.

### 10.3.3 Check the oil level for gearboxes with higher oil level in mounting position M4

Main gearboxes "a" DF, ZF, F., K. for tandem gearboxes do not have any check hole as shown in Figure 10-1.

The oil level for gearboxes with higher oil level in mounting position M4 can be checked as subsequently described.



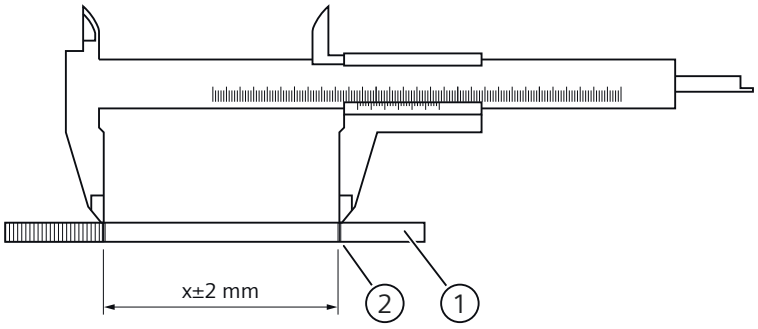

① Dipstick / measuring instruments
② Marking
③ Screw plug

Figure 10-2 Oil level check for tandem gearbox mounting position M4

**Procedure**

1. Switch off the power supply to the drive unit.
2. Remove the screw plug ③.
3. Make a mark ② on a suitable dipstick ①.
4. Insert the dipstick ① vertically into the opening until the mark ② is level with the screw plug seat ③.
5. Pull the dipstick ① out vertically.
6. Measure the distance "x" on the dipstick ①.
7. Compare the value "x" with the value for distance "x" as shown in the table.
8. Correct the oil level and check it again.
9. Check the condition of the sealing ring on screw plug ③ and replace the sealing ring if necessary.
10. Close and seal the gearbox using the screw plug ③.

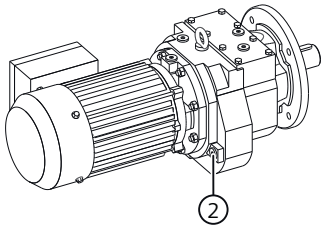
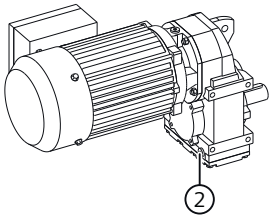
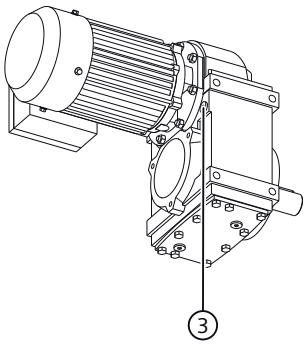
You have checked the oil level of the tandem gearbox.



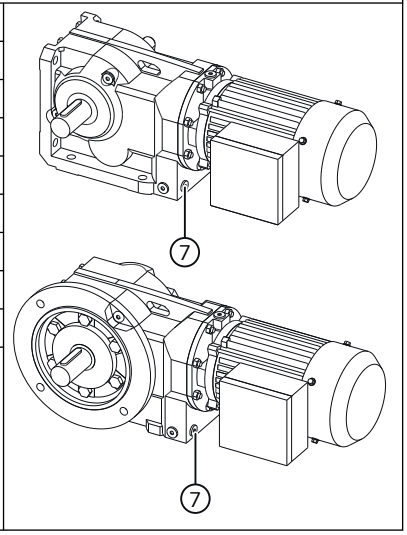

① Dipstick
② Marking

Figure 10-3 Distance "x"

Table 10-3 Values for distance "x"

| Gearbox type | Distance "x" in mounting position M4 | Oil hole position | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | mm | | |
| DZF 49 | 15 | 2 |  |
| DZF 59 | 15 | 2 | |
| DZF 69 | 15 | 2 | |
| DZF 79 | 17 | 2 | |
| DZF 89 | 20 | 2 | |
| DF 109 | 26 | 2 | |
| DF 129 | 29 | 2 | |
| DF 149 | 32 | 2 | |
| DF 169 | 26 | 2 | |
| DF 189 | 49 | 2 | |
| | | | |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 29 | 12 | 2 |  |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 39 | 7 | 3 |  |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 49 | 13 | 3 | |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 69 | 21 | 3 | |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 79 | 20 | 3 | |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 89 | 12 | 3 | |
| FD/Z / FD/ZF 109 | 25 | 3 | |
| FD / FDF 129 | 12 | 3 | |
| FD / FDF 149 | 20 | 3 | |
| FD / FDF 169 | 13 | 3 | |
| FD / FDF 189 | 34 | 3 | |

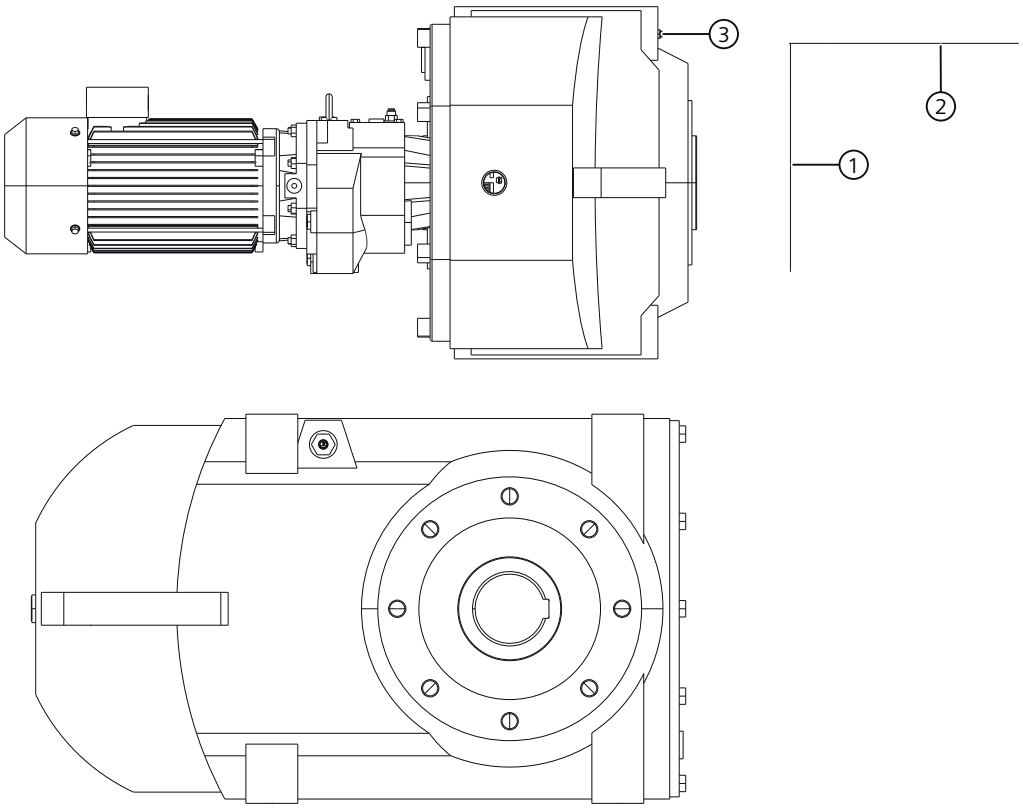
| Gearbox type | Distance "x" in mounting position M4 | Oil hole position |
|---|---|---|
| | mm | |
| | | |
| K / K.Z / KF 39 | 39 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 49 | 12 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 69 | 12 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 79 | 12 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 89 | 12 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 109 | 12 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 129 | 12 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 149 | 16 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 169 | 16 | 7 |
| K / K.Z / KF 189 | 16 | 7 |




## 10.3.4 Check the oil level for gearboxes with higher oil level in mounting position M6

The main gearboxes "a" F. for tandem gearboxes do not have any check hole.

The oil level for gearboxes with higher oil level in mounting position M6 can be checked as subsequently described.



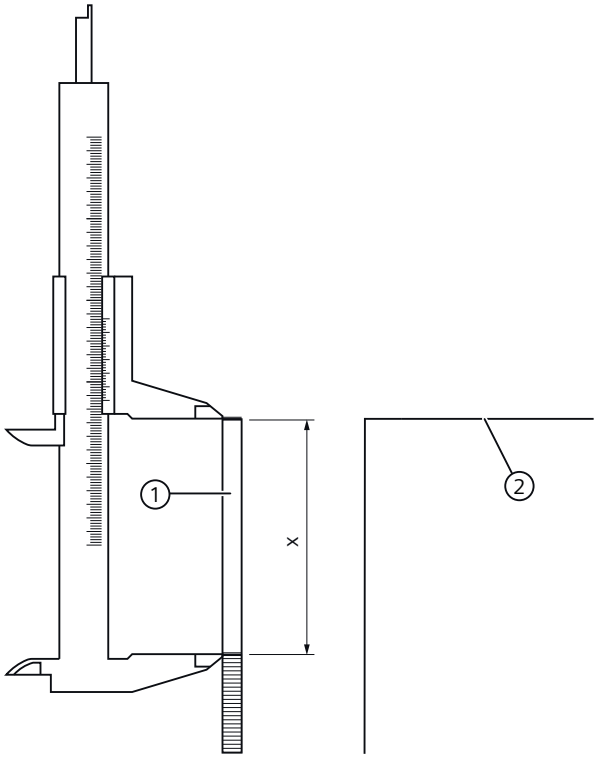

① Dipstick / measuring instruments
② Starting point
③ Screw plug

Figure 10-4 Oil level check for tandem gearbox mounting position M6

**Procedure**

1. Switch off the power supply to the drive unit.
2. Remove the screw plug ③.
3. Guide the dipstick ① through the opening and place the dipstick on the hole.
4. Pull the dipstick ① out.
5. Measure the distance "x" on the dipstick ① from the starting point ②.
6. Compare the value "x" with the value for distance "x" as shown in the table.
7. Top up the oil level if necessary and check it again.
8. Check the condition of the sealing ring on the screw plug ③ and replace the sealing ring if necessary.
9. Seal the gearbox using the screw plug ③.

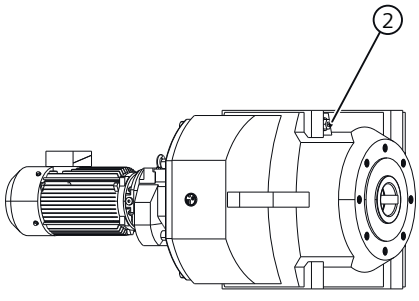
You have checked the oil level of the tandem gearbox.




① Dipstick / measuring instruments
② Starting point

Figure 10-5 Distance x for mounting position M6

Table 10-4 Values for distance "x"

| Gearbox type | Distance "x" in mounting position M6 | Oil hole position | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | mm | | |
| FD / FDF 39 | $35_{-0}$ | 2 |  |
| FD / FDF 49 | $50_{-8}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 69 | $54_{-9}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 79 | $65_{-10}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 89 | $81_{-15}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 109 | $105_{-15}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 129 | $133_{-20}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 149 | $139_{-20}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 169 | $177_{-30}$ | 2 | |
| FD / FDF 189 | $224_{-30}$ | 2 | |

## 10.3.5 Checking the oil level using the oil sight glass (optional)

If there is an oil sight glass to check the oil level ①, the oil must be visible in the center of the sight glass when the oil is cool. When the oil is hot, the oil level ① is above the center of the sight glass. The oil level ① of cold oil is below the center of the sight glass.

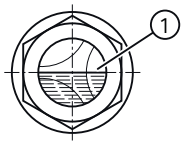



Figure 10-6 Oil level in the oil sight glass

Top up the oil level ① if necessary, and check it again.

## 10.3.6 Checking the oil level using the oil dipstick (optional)

In the M4 mounting position for ZF/EF helical gearboxes, the oil level can be checked with an oil dipstick.

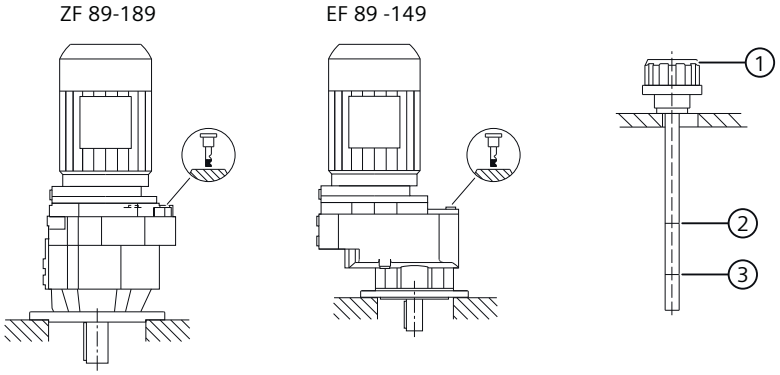



Figure 10-7 Checking the oil level using the oil dipstick

To check the oil level, push the oil dipstick ① into the hole but do not screw it in.

The oil level must be between the lower ② and upper ③ marks on the oil dipstick ①.

After checking, screw the oil dipstick ① in again hand-tight. The oil dipstick ① can remain screwed in during operation.

Correct the oil level and check it again.

## 10.3.7 Checking the oil quality

Visible signs show effects on the oil. Fresh oil is clear to the eye, and has a typical smell and a specific product color. Clouding or a flocculent appearance indicates water and / or contamination. A dark or black color indicates residue, serious thermal decomposition or contamination.

Follow the symbols in the diagrams of the Mounting positions (Page 137).

Venting

Oil level

### Procedure

1. Allow the geared motor to run for a short time. Wear and contaminant particles are visible in the oil shortly after shutting down.
2. Switch off the power supply to the drive unit.
3. Unscrew the sealing element at one of the points marked with the symbols listed above.
4. Remove some oil, using a suction pump and a flexible hose, for example.
5. Check the state of the sealing ring on the sealing element. If required, replace the sealing ring.
6. Seal the gearbox with the sealing element.
7. Check the oil for abnormalities. Change the oil immediately if you determine any abnormalities, as described in Changing the oil (Page 104).

You have now checked the oil quality.

## 10.3.8 Changing the oil

### 10.3.8.1 General safety notes for changing the oil

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Impermissible mixing of oils leads to damage**<br>Impermissible mixing of oils leads to:<br>• Darkening<br>• Sediment<br>• Foam formation<br>• Change of the viscosity or reduced corrosion protection<br>• Wear protection.<br>When changing oil of the same type, the residual volume of oil in the gearbox should be kept as low as possible. Generally speaking, a small residual volume will cause no particular problems.<br>Gear oils of different types and by different manufacturers must not be mixed. Have the manufacturer confirm that the new oil is compatible with the remaining volume of used oil.<br>If very different types of oil or oils with very different additives are changed, always flush out the gearbox with the new oil. When changing from mineral oil to polyglycol oil (PG) or vice versa, it is vital to flush the gearbox twice. All traces of old oil must be completely removed from the gearbox. |

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Contaminations of the oil impair the lubricity**<br>Do not mix the gearbox oil with other substances.<br>Do not flush with paraffin or other solvents, as traces of these substances will always remain inside the gearbox. |

**Note**

The oil must be warm because insufficient viscosity caused by oil that is too cold impairs correct emptying.

If necessary, run the gearbox for 15 to 30 minutes to become warm.

### 10.3.8.2 Draining the oil

Observe the symbols in the diagrams of the Mounting positions (Page 137):

Venting

Oil level

Oil drain

**Procedure**

1. Switch off the power supply to the drive unit.
2. Unscrew the vent plug.
3. Place a suitable and sufficiently large receptacle underneath the oil drain plug.
4. Remove the oil drain plug. Drain all the oil into the receptacle.
5. Check the state of the sealing ring on the sealing element. If the sealing ring is damaged, replace the sealing element with a new one.
6. After draining the oil, seal the gearbox immediately using the sealing element.

You have now drained the oil from the gearbox.

### 10.3.8.3 Flushing the gearbox when changing between incompatible oils

**⚠ WARNING**

**Impermissible mixing of oils leads to damage**

Residual quantities of original oil can impair the specific properties of the new oil.

A flushing process is required with biodegradable and physiologically safe oils.

The residual corrosion protection oil must amount to no more than 1% of the operating oil volume.

**Note**

Polyglycol oil has a higher density than mineral oil. Therefore, it sinks down towards the oil drain and the mineral oil floats on top.

This makes the required complete draining of mineral oil from the gearbox extremely difficult.

**Note**

After the second flush, we recommend that an appropriate analysis institute checks the quality of the flushed fluid.

Observe the symbols in the diagrams of the Mounting positions (Page 137):

Venting

Oil drain

**Procedure**

1. After the oil has been drained, wipe the gearbox clean of any remaining mineral oil using a cloth.
2. Unscrew the vent plug.

3. Fill the gearbox with a flushing oil, using a filter (filter mesh max. 25 µm). For the flushing oil, use either the new oil or one that is compatible with the new oil and is less expensive.
4. Operate the gearbox for 15 to 30 minutes under a low load.
5. Place a suitable and sufficiently large receptacle underneath the oil drain plug.
6. Remove the oil drain plug. Drain all the oil into the receptacle.
7. After flushing, immediately seal the gearbox using the sealing element.
8. Repeat this step for the second flushing.

You have now flushed the gearbox twice and can pour in the new oil.

#### 10.3.8.4 Filling in oil

| **NOTICE** |
| --- |
| **Mixing of different oils impairs the lubricity**<br>When adding oil, use the same oil type and viscosity. If changing mutually incompatible oils, see Flushing the gearbox (Page 105). |

Observe the symbols in the diagrams of the Mounting positions (Page 137):

Venting

**Procedure**

1. Unscrew the vent plug.
2. Fill the gearbox with fresh oil. Use a filler filter with mesh of max. 25 µm.
3. Check the oil level.
4. Correct the oil level if necessary and check it again.
5. Check the state of the sealing ring on the sealing element. If the sealing ring is damaged, replace the sealing element with a new one.
6. After filling with oil, seal the gearbox immediately using the sealing element.

You have now filled up the gearbox with oil.

### 10.3.9 Topping up with oil

If the mounting position of the gearbox is changed or oil lost because of leakage, check the oil level. If you notice oil escaping, locate the leak, and seal the affected area. Top up and check the oil level.

At the time of going to print, the following types of oil are being used when the gearbox is filled for the first time:

CLP ISO VG220: Fuchs Renolin CLP220

CLP ISO PG VG220: Fuchs Renolin PG220

CLP ISO PG VG460: Fuchs Renolin PG460

CLP ISO PAO VG68: Fuchs Renolin Unisyn XT68

CLP ISO PAO VG220: Fuchs Renolin Unisyn XT220

CLP ISO PAO VG460: Fuchs Renolin Unisyn CLP460

CLP ISO E VG220: Fuchs Plantogear S220

CLP ISO H1 VG100: Klüber Klübersynth UH1 6 100

CLP ISO H1 VG460: Castrol Optileb GT 1800/460

If, following agreement, the gearbox is filled at the factory with special lubricant for the special applications referred to above, the lubricant must be shown on the rating plate.

### 10.3.10 Change the roller bearing grease

The roller bearings are lubricated in the factory with the greases listed in the table.

Renew the grease quantify for grease-lubricated bearings with each oil change.

Clean the bearing before filling the bearing with fresh lubricant.

In the case of bearings on the output shaft or intermediate shafts, the grease quantity must fill 2/3, and in the case of bearings on the input side, 1/3 of the space between the rolling elements.

Table 10-5 Roller-bearing and shaft-sealing-ring grease

| Fields of application | Ambient temperature | Manufacturer | Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| Standard | -40 °C to +80 °C | Klüber<br>Fuchs | Petamo GHY 133 N<br>Renolit CX-Tom 15[1)] |
| Foodstuff-compatible for the food industry | -30 °C to +60 °C | Bremer & Leguil | Cassida Grease GTS 2 |
| Biologically degradable, for agriculture, forestry and water industries | -35 °C to +60 °C | Fuchs | Plantogel 2 S |
| [1)] Rolling-bearing grease based on a semi-synthetic base oil. | | | |

## 10.3.11 Service life of the lubricants

**Note**

In case of ambient conditions deviating from normal conditions, e.g. high ambient temperatures, high relative humidity, aggressive ambient media, the intervals between changes should be shorter. In such cases, contact Technical Support for assistance in determining the individual lubricant change interval.

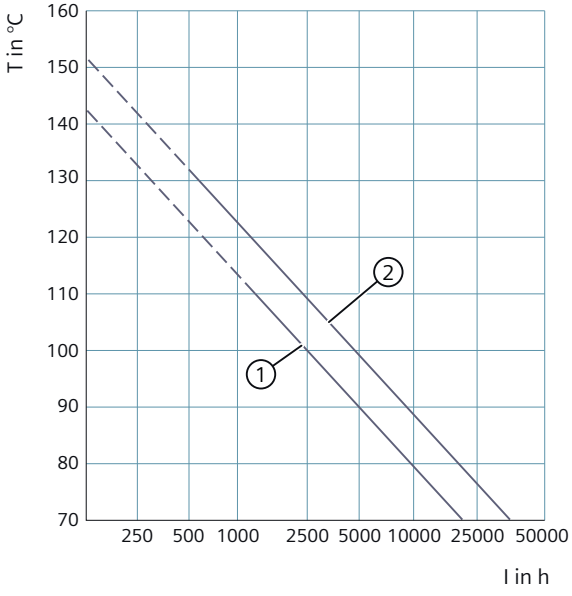
**Note**

Oil sump temperatures above +80 °C can reduce service life. A temperature increase by 10 K halves the service life by the amount as shown in the figure titled "Guide values for oil change intervals".

For a +80 °C oil sump temperature, the following service life can be expected when observing the properties specified by Siemens:

Table 10-6 Service life of the oils

| Type of oil | Service life |
|---|---|
| Mineral oil | 10 000 operating hours or 2 years |
| Biodegradable oil | |
| Physiologically safe oil according to USDA-H1/-H2 | |
| Synthetic oil | 20 000 operating hours or 4 years |




① Mineral oil
② Synthetic oil
T Oil bath steady-state temperature in °C
I Oil change interval in operating hours in h

Figure 10-8 Guide values for oil change intervals

**Grease service life of roller bearing greases**

Roller bearings and the clearance in front are filled with sufficient grease.

Under approved operating conditions and ambient temperatures, no regreasing is required.

We recommend that the grease in the bearings is also renewed when the oil or shaft sealing rings are replaced.

## 10.3.12 Recommended lubricants

The released and recommended lubricants are listed in the table NT 7300 (https://support.industry.siemens.com/cs/ww/en/view/109753864).

**⚠ DANGER**

**Used lubricants only have conditional approval**

The used lubricants are not or only conditionally approved for use in the foodstuff or pharmaceutical industry.

Use only lubricants with USDA (United States Department of Agriculture) H1 / H2 approval for deployment in the foodstuff or pharmaceutical industry.

**NOTICE**

**Incorrect operating temperatures impair lubricity of the gearbox oil**

Operating temperatures outside the permitted range impair the lubricating property of the gearbox oil.

Carefully comply with the permissible oil sump temperatures listed in the lubricant table.

The oil used must be approved for use in the ambient temperature range given on the rating plate.

When changing the oil, comply with the operating temperature range of the new oil as specified by the oil manufacturer.

**Note**

As standard, the lubricants and shaft seals are harmonized and coordinated with one another corresponding to the prevailing operating conditions.

Contact Technical Support for:

- Change of the operating conditions
- Change in oil grade
- Deployment of new shaft seals.

**Note**

The lubricants used are not at all or only conditionally biodegradable. If biologically degradable lubricants are required, use only gearbox lubricants with the appropriate classification listed in the NT 7300 table.

**Note**

SIEMENS recommends the use of CLP ISO PG oils for gearboxes of sizes 169 and 189 with a service factor $f_B$<1.2.

**Note**

These recommendations are not a guarantee of the lubricant quality provided by your supplier. All lubricant manufacturers are responsible for the quality of their own products.

The oil viscosity is decisive for the oil selection (ISO VG class). The viscosity is specified on the rating plate of the gearbox. The viscosity class indicated applies for the contractually agreed operating conditions.

In the case of different operating conditions, contact Technical Support.

If, following agreement, the gearbox is filled at the factory with special lubricant for the special applications referred to above, the lubricant is shown on the rating plate.

The oil quality must meet the gearbox lubricant requirements specified in the NT 7300 table. The SIEMENS warranty is otherwise null and void. We recommend the use of one of these gearbox lubricants. These gearbox oils are subject to constant testing and meet the specified requirements. The recommended oils are possibly removed or replaced by oils that have been further developed at a later point in time. Regularly check that the selected lubricating oil is still recommended by SIEMENS. Otherwise change the product.

Table 10-7 Lubricant table

| **Operating range** | **Oil grade designation according to DIN 51502** | **Permissible oil sump temperature range during operation in °C** | **Ambient temperature in °C** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Helical gearbox E / Z / D, parallel shaft gearbox F and bevel gearbox K | | | -15 ...+40 | -20 ...+40 | -25 ...+40 | -30 ...+40 | -40 ...+40 |
| Standard | CLP ISO VG220 | -15 ... +80 | ✓ | - | - | - | - |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG220 | -30 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓1) |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG68 | -40 ... +60 | - | - | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| | CLP ISO PG VG460 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| | CLP ISO PG VG220 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| Food sector (USDA) NSF-H1 | CLP ISO H1 VG460 | -25 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| | CLP ISO H1 VG100 | -30 ... +90 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | - |
| Biodegradable oil | CLP ISO E VG220 | -20 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | - | - | - |

| **Operating range** | **Oil grade designation according to DIN 51502** | **Permissible oil sump temperature range during operation in °C** | **Ambient temperature in °C** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Helical gearbox E / Z / D, parallel shaft gearbox F and bevel gearbox K | | | -20 ...+45 | -20 ...+50 | -20 ...+60 | |
| Standard | CLP ISO VG220 | -15 ... +80 | - | - | - | |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG220 | -30 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG68 | -40 ... +60 | - | - | - | |
| | CLP ISO PG VG460 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO PG VG220 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Food sector (USDA) NSF-H1 | CLP ISO H1 VG460 | -25 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO H1 VG100 | -30 ... +90 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Biodegradable oil | CLP ISO E VG220 | -20 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Helical worm gearbox C, bevel gearbox B | | | -20 ...+40 | -25 ...+40 | -30 ...+40 | -40 ...+40 |
| Standard | CLP ISO PG VG220 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG460 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG220 | -30 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓1) |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG68 | -40 ... +60 | - | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| | CLP ISO PG VG460 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| Food sector (USDA) NSF-H1 | CLP ISO H1 VG460 | -25 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| | CLP ISO H1 VG100 | -30 ... +90 | ✓ | ✓ | - | - |
| Helical worm gearbox C, bevel gearbox B | | | -20 ...+45 | -20 ...+50 | -20 ...+60 | |
| Standard | CLP ISO PG VG220 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG460 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG220 | -30 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO PAO VG68 | -40 ... +60 | - | - | - | |
| | CLP ISO PG VG460 | -25 ... +110 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| Food sector (USDA) NSF-H1 | CLP ISO H1 VG460 | -25 ... +100 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |
| | CLP ISO H1 VG100 | -30 ... +90 | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | |

1) To ensure optimum lubricating properties, we recommend that the drive is preheated to an operating temperature of at least -30 °C.

CLP = mineral oil

CLP PG = polyglycol oil

E = ester oil, organic oil (bio oil / risk of water pollution, class WGK1)

PAO = poly-alpha-olefin oil

CLP H1 = physiologically safe oil (USDA-H1 approval)

## 10.4 Lubrication of the XLplus and VLplus heavy-duty bearing systems

The output-side bearing is greased depending on the frame size. Initial greasing has already been carried out.

In normal operating conditions and with low loads, the lubrication is sufficient for approximately 25,000 to 30,000 operating hours.

For higher loads due to speed and / or temperature, schedule regreasing at shorter intervals.

**Regreasing intervals**

**Note**

**The relubrication interval of the bearing depends on the temperature and the load**

For temperatures above +70° C, the regreasing interval must be reduced by half for each temperature increase of 15 K.

For moderate shock loading and vibration, the regreasing interval must be reduced by 20%.

For heavy loading, the regreasing interval must be reduced by half.

The regreasing interval is valid for a temperature of +70° C, measured on the surface of the housing in the vicinity of the bearing.

Regrease the bearing after the following number of operating hours.

Table 10-8 Regreasing interval in operating hours [h]

| Output speed $n_2$ | Operating hours for size | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 89 | 109 | 129 | 149 | 169 |
| rpm | h | | | | |
| ≤ 30 | 29000 | 29000 | 29000 | 29000 | 18000 |
| 31 ... 50 | 29000 | 18000 | 18000 | 14000 | 14000 |
| 51 ... 100 | 14000 | 12000 | 12000 | 10000 | 9000 |
| 101 ... 150 | 10000 | 10000 | 9000 | 9000 | 7000 |
| 151 ... 250 | 9000 | 7000 | 7000 | 5000 | 5000 |
| 251 ... 400 | 7000 | 5000 | 5000 | 4000 | 4000 |

**Rolling bearing grease**

| NOTICE |
|---|
| **Impermissible mixing of rolling bearing greases results in damage** |
| Residual quantities of original oil can impair the specific properties of the new oil. |
| When regreasing, do not mix greases with a different soap base. |
| Use the recommended rolling bearing grease when relubricating the bearings. |

Using a grease gun, inject the grease into the bearing point via the lubricating nipples provided.

The grease quantities listed in the table are guide values.

Table 10-9 Grease quantity [g] for relubrication

| **Regreasing interval** | **Grease quantity for size** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **89** | **109** | **129** | **149** | **169** |
| | **g** | | | | |
| After 6 months | 10 | 10 | 20 | 20 | 30 |
| After several years without operation | 28 | 33 | 46 | 68 | 95 |

**Maintenance of the output-side bearing**

**Note**

Change the grease filling of the rolling bearing when you change the gear oil.

Use the recommended rolling bearing grease when filling the bearings with new grease.

## Procedure

1. Dismantle the output-side bearing unit.
2. Clean the bearing.
3. Fill the bearing with the new grease up to approximately 30% of the free bearing chamber.
4. Reassemble the bearing unit.

You have relubricated the bearing unit.

**Maintenance interval after regreasing**

After regreasing, the maintenance interval can be increased to the following number of operating hours.

Table 10-10 Maintenance interval in operating hours [h] for relubrication

| **Output speed $n_2$** | **Operating hours for size** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **89** | **109** | **129** | **149** | **169** |
| **rpm** | **h** | | | | |
| ≤ 30 | 80000 | 80000 | 80000 | 80000 | 50000 |
| 31 ... 50 | 80000 | 50000 | 50000 | 40000 | 40000 |
| 51 ... 100 | 40000 | 32000 | 32000 | 28000 | 25000 |
| 101 ... 150 | 28000 | 28000 | 25000 | 25000 | 20000 |
| 151 ... 250 | 25000 | 20000 | 20000 | 15000 | 15000 |
| 251 ... 400 | 20000 | 15000 | 15000 | 10000 | 10000 |

## 10.5 Replace bearings

The bearing service life is finite, greatly depends on the operating conditions and therefore cannot be calculated reliably. In the operating conditions specified by the operator, bearing life can be calculated. Changes in vibration and noise pattern are an indication that an immediate bearing replacement is necessary.

## 10.6 Checking the gearbox for leaks

**Note**

**Service life of the shaft sealing rings**

Shaft sealing rings are subject to natural wear. The service life depends on the operating conditions.

Include the shaft sealing rings in periodic maintenance and service work carried out on the system.

**Note**

From the inherent principle of operation, oil mist can escape from the vent valve or a labyrinth seal.

Oil or grease escaping in small quantities from the shaft sealing ring should be regarded as normal during the running-in phase of 24 hours operating time.

Avoid consequential damage: If the leakage quantities are significant or leaking continues after the running-in phase, then replace the shaft sealing ring.

Table 10-11 Description and measures

| Status | Description | Measures | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Film of moisture on the shaft sealing ring | Film of moisture as a result of the inherent principle of operation (apparent leakage) | Remove using a clean cloth and continue to observe. | This does not represent a fault; frequently, in the course of operation, the sealing ring dries off. |
| Leakage at the shaft sealing ring | Identifiable small trickle, formation of drops, also after the running-in phase | Replace the sealing ring, determine the possible cause of the sealing ring failure and rectify. | During the run-in period, the shaft sealing ring beds into the shaft. A visible track can be seen on the shaft. Optimum preconditions for a perfect seal are obtained after the run-in period. |

## 10.7 Replacing the vent valve

To ensure correct functioning, renew the breather valve yearly.

When replacing, prevent dirt and damaging atmospheres from entering the gearbox.

If too much oil is contained in the gearbox, oil will escape from the breather valve. Correct the oil quantity and replace the breather valve.

## 10.8 Checking the oil level sensor (optional)

The oil level sensor indicates the oil level only when the gearbox is shut down.

Lower the oil level and fill it up again until the oil level sensor gives a switching signal.

Please refer to the separate operating instructions for the oil level sensor.

## 10.9 Cleaning the gearbox or geared motor

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**

When cleaning the gearbox, do not use any processes or materials that generate an electrostatic charging on the surface of the gearbox.

To avoid electrostatic charging, clean the surface of the geared motors using a damp cloth.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Explosion hazard due to overheating of the machine caused by a layer of dust**

Deposits of dust have a thermally insulating effect, causing the machine to overheat. The maximum surface temperature of the machine is not adhered to. The dust is ignited as a result, causing an explosion. Death, serious injury and material damage will result.

- Regularly remove dust from the machine.
- Do not allow dust layers thicker than 5 mm to build up.
- Switch the machine on when the dust has been removed.

**NOTICE**

**Dust deposits cause higher housing temperatures**

Dust deposits prevent heat radiation.

Keep the geared motor free from dirt and dust.

**NOTICE**

**Cleaning with a high-pressure cleaning appliance**

Water penetrates the geared motor. Seals are damaged.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaning appliance to clean the geared motor.

Do not use tools with sharp edges.

De-energize the drive unit and bring it into a no-voltage condition when cleaning the drive unit.

## 10.10 Checking tightness of fastening bolts

**Ex-version of gearbox and geared motor**
Loose parts can cause sparks through impact.
Entry of foreign bodies can cause sparks.

**Note**

Replace damaged headless bolts with new bolts of the same type and strength class.

Switch off the power supply to the drive unit. Check all fastening bolts for tightness using a torque wrench.

The general tolerance for the tightening torque is 10%. The tightening torque is based on a friction coefficient of μ = 0.14.

Table 10-12 Tightening torques for fixing screws

| **Thread size** | **Tightening torque for property class** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **8.8** | **10.9** | **12.9** |
| | **Nm** | **Nm** | **Nm** |
| M4 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| M5 | 6 | 9 | 10 |
| M6 | 10 | 15 | 18 |
| M8 | 25 | 35 | 41 |
| M10 | 50 | 70 | 85 |
| M12 | 90 | 120 | 145 |
| M16 | 210 | 295 | 355 |
| M20 | 450 | 580 | 690 |
| M24 | 750 | 1 000 | 1 200 |
| M30 | 1 500 | 2 000 | 2 400 |
| M36 | 2 500 | 3 600 | 4 200 |

## 10.11 Inspecting the gearbox

Carry out a scheduled inspection of the gearbox once a year in accordance with the possible criteria listed in General notes about maintenance work (Page 91).

Check the gearbox in accordance with the criteria set out in Specific safety instructions (Page 27).

Touch up damaged paintwork carefully.

## 10.12 Replacing the hose of the oil expansion unit

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Hose with leaks**<br>The hose of the oil expansion unit is subject to natural wear. The service life depends on the operating conditions.<br>Check the hose regularly for tears or leaks.<br>Renew the hose every 4 years at the latest. |

# Disposal

# 11

**Recycling and disposal of SIMOGEAR geared motors**

For environmentally compliant recycling and disposal of your discarded device, please contact a company certified for the disposal of old electrical and electronic devices. Dispose of the device in accordance with the regulations valid in your country.

| ⚠ WARNING |
| --- |
| **Incorrect disposal of used oil** |
| Incorrect disposal of used oil is a threat to the environment and health. |
| After use, oil must be taken to a used oil collection point. The addition of foreign substances such as solvents, brake and cooling fluid is prohibited. |
| Avoid prolonged contact with the skin. |

Empty the used oil from the gearbox. The used oil must be collected, stored, transported and disposed of in accordance with regulations. Do not mix polyglycols with mineral oil. Dispose of polyglycols separately.

Strictly observe country-specific rules and regulations. Under German law, to allow optimal treatment of the oil (§ 4 VI Used Oil), oils with different disposal codes must not be mixed with one another.

Collect and dispose of used oil in accordance with regulations.

Immediately remove any spilt oil with an oil-binding agent.

Dispose of the housing parts, gears, shafts, and rolling bearings of the geared motor as scrap metal.

Dispose of packaging material in accordance with regulations.

Table 11-1 Disposal codes for gear oils

| Oil grade | Designation | Disposal code |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Mineral oil | CLP ISO VG220 | 13 02 05 |
| Polyglycols | CLP ISO PG VG220,<br>CLP ISO PG VG460,<br>CLP ISO H1 VG100,<br>CLP ISO H1 VG460 | 13 02 08 |
| Poly-Alpha-Olefines | CLP ISO PAO VG68,<br>CLP ISO PAO VG220,<br>CLP ISO PAO VG460 | 13 02 06 |
| Biologically degradable oils | CLP ISO E VG220 | 13 02 07 |

# Technical data

# 12

## 12.1 Type designation

Table 12-1 Example of the article number structure

| SIMOGEAR gearbox | Article number position | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| Helical gearbox E | 2 | K | J | 3 | 0 |
| Helical gearbox Z | 2 | K | J | 3 | 1 |
| Helical gearbox D | 2 | K | J | 3 | 2 |
| Parallel shaft gearbox FZ | 2 | K | J | 3 | 3 |
| Parallel shaft gearbox FD | 2 | K | J | 3 | 4 |
| Bevel gearbox B, K | 2 | K | J | 3 | 5 |
| Helical worm gearbox C | 2 | K | J | 3 | 6 |
| Worm gearbox or worm geared motor S | 2 | K | J | 3 | 7 |

Table 12-2 Example of the type designation structure

| Example: | Main gearbox | | | | Intermediate helical gearbox | | Input unit | | Ex marking |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | F | D | F | 89 | - Z | 39 | - K4 | (100) | - 1 |
| Gearbox type | F | | | | | | | | |
| Stage | | D | | | | | | | |
| Type | | | F | | | | | | |
| Size | | | | 89 | | | | | |
| Development status | | | | - | | | | | |
| Stage | | | | | Z | | | | |
| Size | | | | | | 39 | | | |
| Input unit | | | | | | | K4 | | |
| (for motor size) | | | | | | | | (100) | |
| Ex marking | | | | | | | | | 1 |

Table 12-3 Type designation code

| Gearbox type | |
|---|---|
| (-) | Helical gearbox |
| F | Parallel shaft gearbox |
| B | Bevel gearbox, two-stage |
| K | Bevel gearbox, three-stage |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| C | | Helical worm gearbox |
| S | | Worm gearbox or worm geared motor |
| Stage | | |
| (-) | | |
| E | | Single-stage |
| Z | | Two-stage |
| D | | Three-stage |
| Type | | |
| | Shaft | |
| | (-) | Solid shaft |
| | A | Hollow shaft |
| | E | Plug-in shaft |
| | Fixing | |
| | (-) | Foot-mounted design |
| | B | Foot / flange-mounted version |
| | F | Flange-mounted design (A type) |
| | Z | Housing flange (C type) |
| | D | Torque arm |
| | G | Flange (A type) opposite output shaft |
| | Connection | |
| | (-) | Feather key |
| | S | Shrink disk |
| | T | Hollow shaft with splines |
| | R | SIMOLOC assembly system |
| | Special features | |
| | W | Reduced-backlash version |
| Intermediate helical gearbox - transmission stage | | |
| | Z | Two-stage |
| | D | Three-stage |
| Input unit | | |
| KS | | Coupling adapter only for mounting a SIEMENS SIMOTICS S-1FK7/-1FT7, SIMOTICS M-1PH8, SIMOTICS S-1FK2, SIMOTICS S-1FL6 servomotor |
| K2 | | Coupling adapter with flexible coupling for fitting an IEC motor |
| K3 | | Coupling adapter with flexible coupling for mounting a NEMA motor |
| K4 | | Short adapter with plug-in connection for fitting an IEC motor |
| K5 | | Short adapter with plug-in connection for mounting a NEMA motor |
| KQ(S) | | Coupling adapter for mounting a SIMOTICS S-1FK7/-1FT7 servomotor |
| K8 | | Coupling adapter for mounting a SIMOTICS M-1PH8 servomotor |
| A | | Adapter with free input shaft |
| Ex marking | | |
| - | | No Ex version |
| 1 | | Ex version |

Combinations of SIMOTICS motor and SIMOGEAR gearbox with adapter are identified by the following Article Nos.

| Part number | Description |
|---|---|
| T1A01xxxxxxxxx | SIMOTICS S-1FK2 with SIMOGEAR |
| T1A02xxxxxxxxx | SIMOTICS S-1FK7 with SIMOGEAR |
| T1A03xxxxxxxxx | SIMOTICS S-1FT7 with SIMOGEAR |
| T1A04xxxxxxxxx | SIMOTICS M-1PH8 with SIMOGEAR |
| T1A05xxxxxxxxx | SIMOTICS GP 1LE1 with SIMOGEAR |
| T1A06xxxxxxxxx | SIMOTICS XP 1MB1 with SIMOGEAR |

## 12.2 Rating plate data

### 12.2.1 General technical data

**⚠ WARNING**

**Exceeding the power limits**

Exceeding the power limits (max. speeds, max. torque etc.) of the gearbox or motor can damage the geared motor.

Maintain the permissible operating ranges and power limits of the motor and gearbox.

The max. speeds and torque shown indicate the mechanical limits of the geared motor. Depending on the application, also take into account thermal limits. In applications with long max. speed components, high pressure build-up may occur in the gearbox, which can cause damage to the gearbox (e.g. leakage).

The most important technical data appears on the rating plate of the gearboxes and geared motors.

This data, together with the contractual agreements for the geared motors, determines the limits of intended use.

In the case of geared motors, a rating plate attached to the motor indicates the data for the entire drive.

In certain cases separate rating plates are attached to the gearbox and the motor. Maintain the operating ranges and power limits on all rating plates.

The degree of protection according to EN 60034-5 (IEC 60034-5) specified on the nameplates only applies to the motor of the unit.

When selecting higher degrees of protection, also take into consideration the equipping on the gearbox side (seals, vents).

## 12.2.2 SIMOGEAR gearbox rating plate

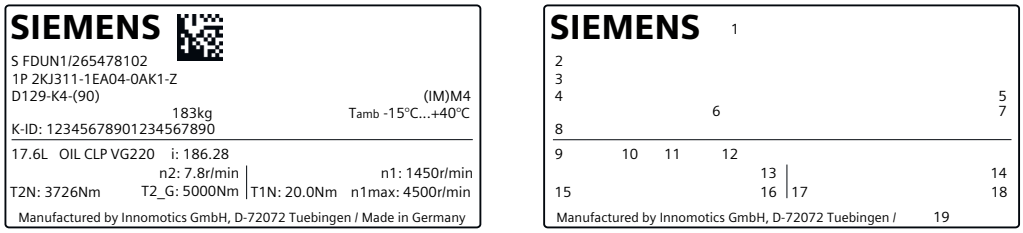



Figure 12-1 Example of a SIMOGEAR rating plate for gearboxes

1 Data matrix code
2 Serial number
3 Article number
4 Type designation
5 Mounting position
6 Weight *m* in kg
7 Ambient temperature
8 Customer ID
9 Oil quantity in l, main gearbox / intermediate gearbox
10 Oil grade
11 Oil viscosity ISO VG class according to DIN 51519 / ISO 3448
12 Total transmission ratio i
13 Gear output speed $n_2$ in rpm
14 Reference input speeds $n_1$ in rpm
15 Maximum permissible output torque of the gearbox/adapter combination for continuous duty $T_{2N}$ in Nm
16 Maximum permissible output torque of the gearbox without adapter unit for continuous duty $T_{2\_G}$ in Nm
17 Maximum permissible input torque of the gearbox/adapter combination for continuous duty $T_{1N}$ in Nm
18 Maximum permissible short-term input speed $n_{1max}$ in $min^{-1}$
19 Manufacturer's address and country of origin

### 12.2.3 Rating plate SIMOGEAR converter world motor

2 operating points as well as the usual certificates and the energy efficiency class are stamped on the rating plate of the converter world motor. The motor is only suitable for converter operation.

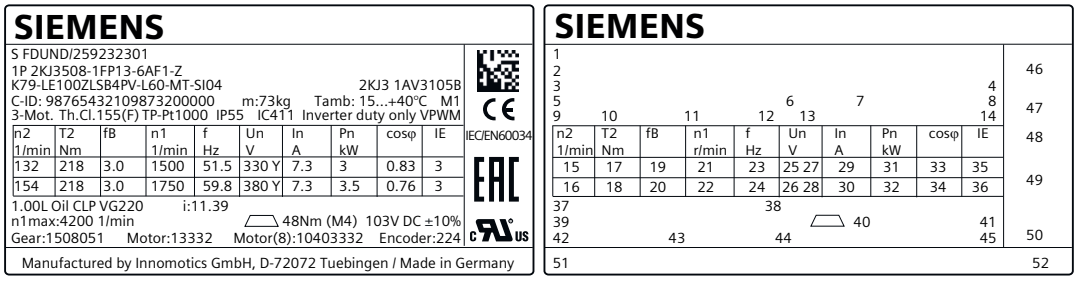



Figure 12-2 Example of a SIMOGEAR rating plate for the converter world motor

1 Article number
2 Serial number
3 Type designation (with marking for a brake and/or encoder if available)
4 Geared motor type
5 Customer-specific data
6 Weight m in kg
7 Ambient temperature
8 Geared motor mounting position
9 Phase number and type of current for the motor
10 Temperature class Th. Cl.
11 Thermal motor protection
12 Degree of protection acc. to IEC 60034-5
13 Ventilation type acc. to IEC 60034-5
14 Motor operating mode according to IEC 60034
15 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm for the 1st rated operating point
16 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm for the 2nd rated operating point
17 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm for the 1st rated operating point
18 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm for the 2nd rated operating point
19 Service factor $f_B$ for the 1st rated operating point
20 Service factor $f_B$ for the 2nd rated operating point
21 Rated speed $n_1$ in rpm for the 1st point
22 Rated speed $n_1$ in rpm for the 2nd point
23 Rated frequency $f_1$ in Hz for the 1st point
24 Rated frequency $f_1$ in Hz for the 2nd point
25 Rated voltage $U_n$ in V for the 1st point
26 Rated voltage $U_n$ in V for the 2nd point
27 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6 for the 1st point

28 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6 for the 2nd point
29 Rated current $I_N$ in A for the 1st point
30 Rated current $I_N$ in A for the 2nd point
31 Rated power $P_N$ in kW for the 1st point
32 Rated power $P_N$ in kW for the 2nd point
33 Power factor cosφ for the 1st rated operating point
34 Power factor cosφ for the 2nd rated operating point
35 Efficiency class according to IEC TS 60034-30-2 for the 1st rated operating point
36 Efficiency class according to IEC TS 60034-30-2 for the 2nd rated operating point
37 Oil quantity in l for the main gearbox/intermediate gearbox, oil type, oil viscosity ISO VG class according to DIN 51519 / ISO 3448
38 Total transmission ratio i
39 Maximum permissible speed of the motor in rpm
40 M4 rated braking torque $T_{br}$ in Nm
41 Brake supply voltage U in V
42 Gearbox code for SINAMICS systems
43 Motor code for 2nd Generation SINAMICS systems
44 Motor code for 3rd Generation SINAMICS systems
45 Encoder code for SINAMICS systems
46 Data matrix code
47 CE marking
48 Underlying standard
49 EAC marking
50 Recognized Component test symbol for Canada and the US
51 Manufacturer's address
52 Country of origin

## 12.2.4 Rating plate SIMOGEAR geared motors without a UL/CSA design

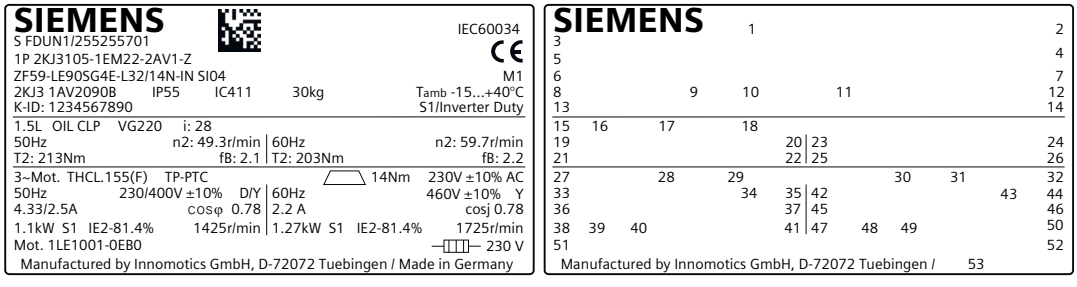



Figure 12-3 Example of a SIMOGEAR rating plate for geared motors without UL-CSA

1 Data matrix code
2 Underlying standard
3 Serial number

4 CE marking or other marking, if required
5 Article number
6 Type designation with marking of the (functionally safe) rotary encoder
7 Mounting position
8 Geared motor type
9 Degree of protection acc. to IEC 60034-5
10 Ventilation type acc. to IEC 60034-6
11 Weight *m* in kg
12 Ambient temperature
13 Customer ID
14 Motor operating mode
15 Oil quantity in l, main gearbox / intermediate gearbox
16 Oil grade
17 Oil viscosity ISO VG class according to DIN 51519 / ISO 3448
18 Total transmission ratio i

Frequency 1

19 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
20 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm
21 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm
22 Service factor $f_B$

Frequency 2

23 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
24 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm
25 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm
26 Service factor $f_B$

Motor and brake data

27 Phase number and type of current for the motor
28 Temperature class Th. Cl.
29 Thermal motor protection
30 Symbols (IEC 60617-2): ⏢ = brake
31 Rated braking torque $T_{Br}$ in Nm
32 Brake supply voltage *U* in V

Frequency 1

33 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
34 Rated voltage / range *U* in V
35 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6
36 Rated current $I_N$ in A
37 Power factor cos φ
38 Rated power $P_N$ in kW
39 Operating mode for motor and brake (if ≠ S1)

40 For induction motors: Efficiency class marking according to IEC 60034-30 with efficiency data
For synchronous-reluctance motors/VSD 4000: Efficiency class marking according to IEC TS 60034-30-2 without efficiency data

41 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm

Frequency 2

42 Rated frequency *f* in Hz

43 Rated voltage / range *U* in V

44 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6

45 Rated current $I_N$ in A

46 Power factor cos φ

47 Rated power $P_N$ in kW

48 Operating mode for motor and brake (if ≠ S1)

49 Efficiency class marking according to IEC 60034-30

50 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm

51 Motor designation

52 Anti-condensation heating

53 Manufacturer's address and country of origin

## 12.2.5 Rating plate SIMOGEAR geared motors with a UL/CSA design

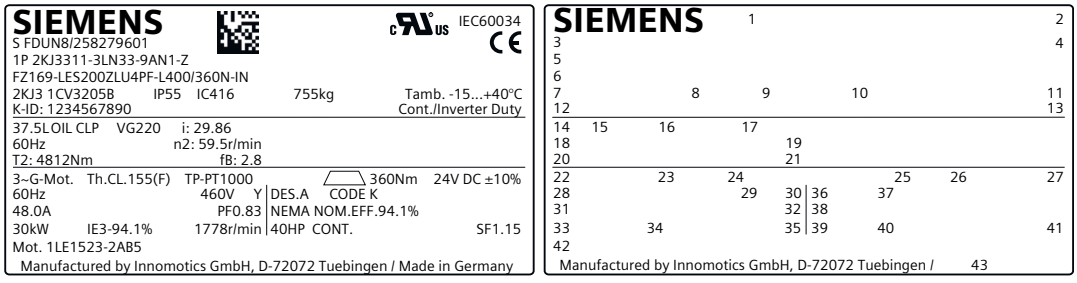



Figure 12-4 Example of a SIMOGEAR rating plate for geared motors with UL/CSA approval

1 Data matrix code

2 Underlying standard

3 Serial number

4 CE marking or other marking, if required

5 Article number

6 Type designation with marking of the (functionally safe) rotary encoder

7 Geared motor type

8 Degree of protection acc. to IEC 60034-5

9 Ventilation type acc. to IEC 60034-6

10 Weight *m* in kg

11 Ambient temperature

12 Customer ID

13 Motor operating mode according to UL
14 Oil quantity in l, main gearbox / intermediate gearbox
15 Oil grade
16 Oil viscosity ISO VG class according to DIN 51519 / ISO 3448
17 Total transmission ratio i

Frequency 1

18 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
19 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm
20 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm
21 Service factor $f_B$

Motor and brake data

22 Phase number and type of current for the motor
23 Temperature class Th. Cl.
24 Thermal motor protection
25 Symbols (IEC 60617-2): ⏢ = brake
26 Rated braking torque $T_{Br}$ in Nm
27 Brake supply voltage *U* in V

Frequency 1

28 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
29 Rated voltage / range *U* in V
30 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6
31 Rated current $I_N$ in A
32 Performance factor
33 Rated power $P_N$ in kW
34 For induction motors: Efficiency class marking according to IEC 60034-30 with efficiency data
For synchronous-reluctance motors/VSD 4000: Efficiency class marking according to IEC TS 60034-30-2 without efficiency data
35 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm
36 Design letter
37 Code letter
38 NEMA energy efficiency
39 Rated power $P_N$ in HP
40 NEMA operating mode
41 Service factor
42 Motor designation
43 Manufacturer's address and country of origin

## 12.2.6 Rating plate SIMOGEAR geared motors for converter operation

The supplementary plate of the geared motor with line motors is suitable for converter operation. Technical data for converter operation at 87 Hz and 104 Hz is stamped on the supplementary plate.

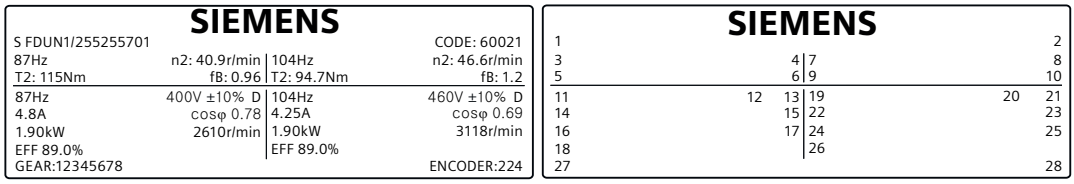



Figure 12-5 Example of an additional SIMOGEAR rating plate for geared motors for converter operation at 87 Hz and 104 Hz

1 Serial number

2 Motor code

Frequency 1

3 Rated frequency *f* in Hz

4 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm

5 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm

6 Service factor $f_B$

Frequency 2

7 Rated frequency *f* in Hz

8 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm

9 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm

10 Service factor $f_B$

Motor and brake data

Frequency 1

11 Rated frequency *f* in Hz

12 Rated voltage / range *U* in V

13 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6

14 Rated current $I_N$ in A

15 Power factor cos φ

16 Rated power $P_N$ in kW

17 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm

18 Energy efficiency

Frequency 2

19 Rated frequency *f* in Hz

20 Rated voltage / range *U* in V

21 Circuit, circuit symbols according to DIN EN 60617 Part 6 / IEC 60617-6

22 Rated current $I_N$ in A

23 Power factor cos φ

24 Rated power $P_N$ in kW

25 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm

26 Energy efficiency
27 Gearbox code for SINAMICS systems
28 Encoder code for SINAMICS systems

## 12.2.7 Identification label for combinations of SIMOTICS motors and SIMOGEAR gearboxes with adapter

### 12.2.7.1 Combinations with SIMOTICS S-1FK2, S-1FK7, S-1FT7, 1LE1, 1MB1 and 1PH8 motors

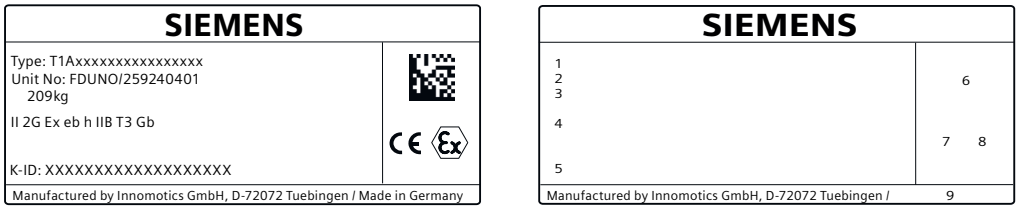



Figure 12-6 Example of an identification label with SIMOTICS 1LE1, 1MB1 and 1PH8 motors

1 Technical numbering system for gearbox, adapter and motor combinations
2 Serial number
3 Total weight of gearbox, adapter and motor combinations
4 System marking type of protection
5 Customer-specific data (max. 20 characters)
6 Data matrix code - technical number system + serial number
7 CE marking
8 Ex marking
9 Manufacturer's address and country of origin

### 12.2.7.2 Explanation of the motor rating plate data

For the following combinations of gearbox, adapter and motor, observe the operating instructions of the corresponding motor series, see General overview (Page 27).

- Gearbox - adapter KS - SIMOTICS S-1FK7
- Gearbox - adapter KS - SIMOTICS S-1FT7
- Gearbox - adapter KS - SIMOTICS S-1FK2
- Gearbox - adapter KS/K8 - SIMOTICS M-1PH8
- Gearbox - adapter K2/K4 - IEC standard motor SIMOTICS GP 1LE1
- Gearbox - adapter K2/K4 - explosion protected motors SIMOTICS XP 1MB1

## 12.2.8 Rating plates for SIMOGEAR worm geared motor S

### 12.2.8.1 Rating plate SIMOGEAR worm gearbox or worm geared motor

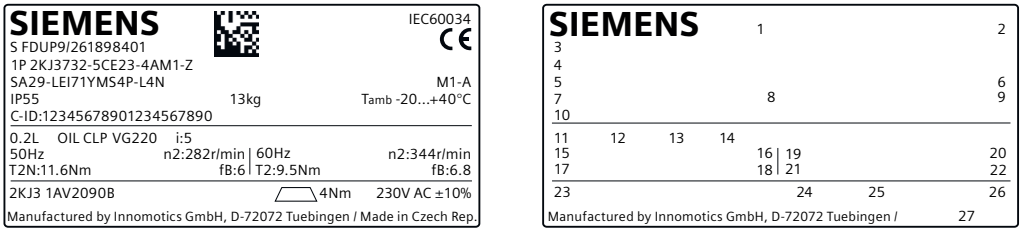



Figure 12-7 Example of a SIMOGEAR rating plate for worm geared motors

1 Data matrix code
2 Underlying standard
3 Serial number
4 Article number
5 Type designation
6 Mounting position
7 Degree of protection acc. to IEC 60034-5
8 Weight *m* in kg
9 Ambient temperature
10 Customer ID
11 Oil quantity in l
12 Oil grade
13 Oil viscosity ISO VG class according to DIN 51519 / ISO 3448
14 Total transmission ratio i

Frequency 1

15 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
16 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm
17 Geared motor output torque $T_{2N}$ in Nm
18 Service factor $f_B$

Frequency 2

19 Rated frequency *f* in Hz
20 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm
21 Geared motor output torque $T_2$ in Nm
22 Service factor $f_B$
23 Geared motor type
24 Symbols (IEC 60617-2): ⏢ = brake
25 Rated braking torque $T_{Br}$ in Nm
26 Brake supply voltage *U* in V
27 Manufacturer's address and country of origin

### 12.2.8.2 Example of a 1LE motor rating plate

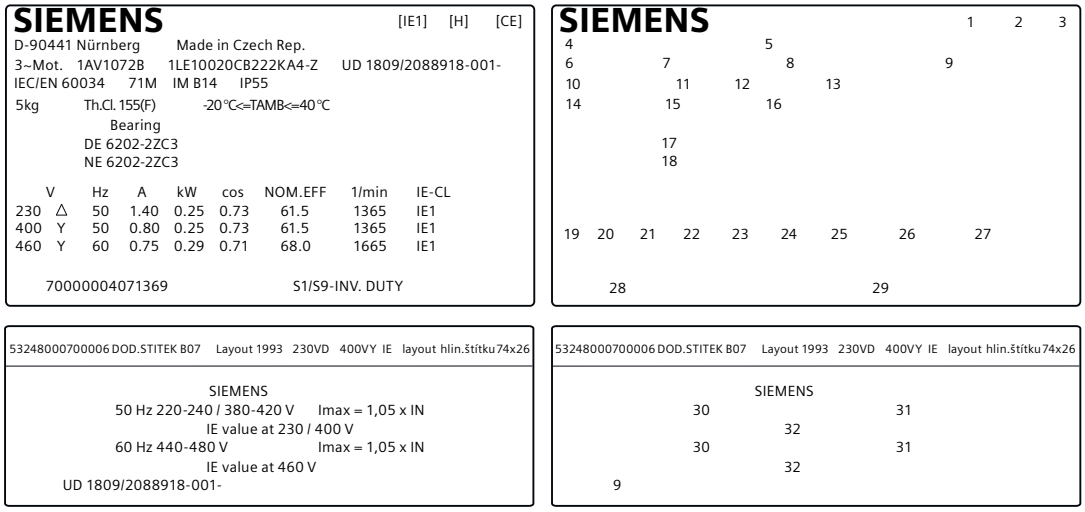



Figure 12-8 Example of a 1LE motor rating plate

1 IE efficiency class
2 Half-key balancing
3 Standards and regulations
4 Headquarters
5 Manufacturer's address
6 Motor type: Three-phase low voltage motor
7 Motor type number (MT)
8 Article number
9 Date of manufacture YYMM / serial number
10 Underlying standard
11 Frame size
12 Type of construction
13 Degree of protection
14 Weight *m* in kg
15 Temperature class Th. Cl.
16 Ambient temperature
17 Bearing size DE
18 Bearing size NDE
19 Rated voltage in V
20 Winding connections
21 Frequency *f* in Hz
22 Rated current $I_N$ in A
23 Rated power $P_N$ in kW
24 Power factor cos φ
25 Efficiency
26 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm

27 IE efficiency class
28 Material number
29 Duty type
30 Voltage range
31 Maximum current
32 IE value at specified voltage

### 12.2.8.3 Example of a 1LE motor rating plate with CCC version

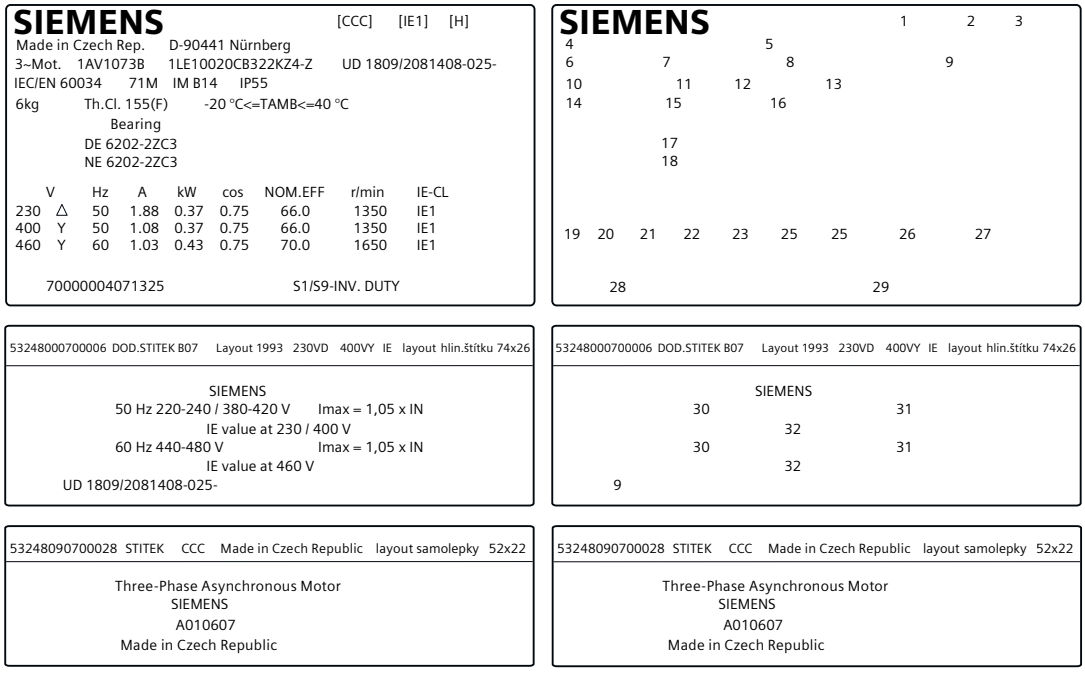



Figure 12-9 Example of a 1LE motor rating plate with CCC version

1 CCC marking
2 IE efficiency class
3 Half-key balancing
4 Headquarters
5 Manufacturer's address
6 Motor type: Three-phase low voltage motor
7 Motor type number (MT)
8 Article number
9 Date of manufacture YYMM / serial number
10 Underlying standard
11 Frame size
12 Type of construction
13 Degree of protection
14 Weight *m* in kg

15 Temperature class
16 Ambient temperature
17 Bearing size DE
18 Bearing size NDE
19 Rated voltage in V
20 Winding connections
21 Frequency *f* in Hz
22 Rated current $I_N$ in A
23 Rated power $P_N$ in kW
24 Power factor cos φ
25 Efficiency
26 Rated speed $n_N$ in rpm
27 IE efficiency class
28 Material number
29 Duty type
30 Voltage range
31 Maximum current
32 IE value at specified voltage

## 12.2.9 Rating plate for geared motors in Ex version

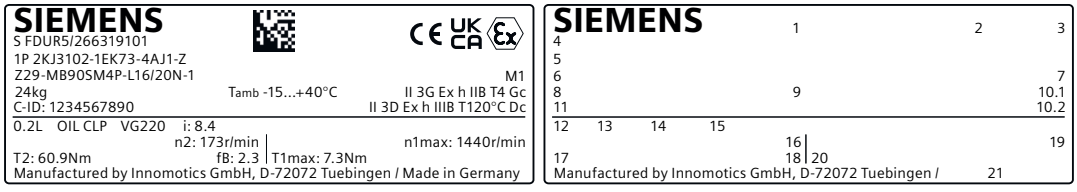



Figure 12-10 Example of an attached Ex rating plate

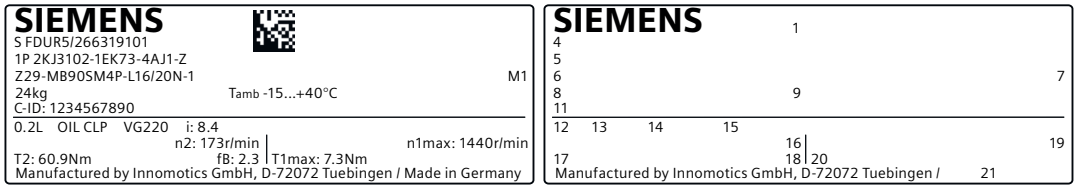



Figure 12-11 Example of a Ex rating plate, supplied loose

1 Data matrix code
2 CE and UKCA marking
3 ⟨Ex⟩ marking
4 Serial number
5 Article number
6 Type designation
7 Mounting position

8 Weight *m* in kg
9 Ambient temperature
10.1 Gas explosion protection type
10.2 Dust explosion protection type
11 Customer ID
12 Oil quantity in l, main gearbox / intermediate gearbox
13 Oil grade
14 Oil viscosity ISO VG class according to DIN 51519 / ISO 3448
15 Total transmission ratio i
16 Gearbox output speed $n_2$ in rpm
17 Configured output torque of the gearbox/adapter combination $T_2$ in Nm
18 Service factor $f_B$
19 Configured input speed $n_{1max}$ in rpm
20 Configured input torque of the gearbox/adapter combination $T_{1max}$ in Nm
21 Manufacturer's address and country of origin

## 12.2.10 Product marking UKCA (United Kingdom Conformity Assessed)

The UKCA sign shows the UKCA mark and the company name and address of the importer of the product in the UK.


Figure 12-12 UKCA label

## 12.2.11 Repair rating plate for Ex

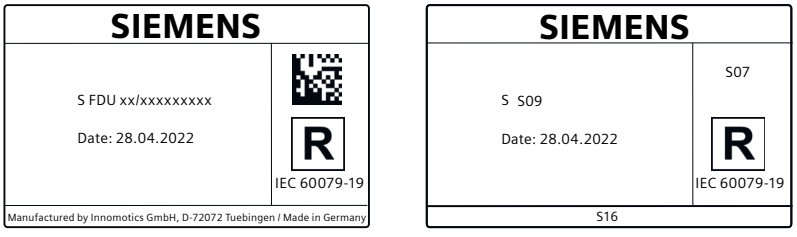



Figure 12-13 Example of a repair rating plate for ATEX

S09 Production identification (FID)
S07 Data matrix code
S16 Manufacturer's address

## 12.3 Weight

The weight of the entire geared motor is given in the shipping papers.

The weight is stated on the rating plate of the motor, gearbox or geared motor.

The weight specification refers only to the product in the delivery state.

## 12.4 Sound energy level

SIMOGEAR geared motors have noise levels below the permissible noise levels defined for gearboxes in VDI guideline 2159 and for motors in IEC 60034-9. Interaction with gearboxes causes the motor noise values $L_{pfA}$ or $L_{WA}$ to increase on average by 3 to 5 dB (A).

The circumferential velocity of the motor pinion has a significant influence on the additional gearbox noise level. As a consequence, higher speeds or lower ratios result in higher noise.

SIMOGEAR geared motors provide a decisive advantage here, since the motor plug-on pinion allows transmission ratios of up to 12 in the input stage.

| Code | Description | Unit |
|---|---|---|
| $L_{pfA}$ | A-weighted enveloping surface sound pressure level | dB (A) |
| $L_{WA}$ | Sound power level | dB (A) |

**External noise**

Noise not generated by the gearbox but emitted from it are not taken into consideration.

Noise emitted by the drive and driven machines or the base are also not taken into consideration. Even when the noise from the gearbox have been transferred there.

## 12.5 Mounting positions

### 12.5.1 General notes on mounting positions

Only operate the gearbox in the mounting position specified on the rating plate. This ensures that the correct quantity of lubricant is provided.

The symbols are shown for the standard mounting position.

**Note**

**Gearbox sizes 19 and 29**

Gearbox sizes 19 and 29 are lubricated for life. There is no opening to check the oil level.

In mounting positions M2 and M4 the gearboxes have a breather valve.

C29 has a breather valve in all mounting positions.

**Note**

**Worm gearbox or worm geared motor**

Gearboxes are lubricated for life. There are no openings to check the oil level.

Description of the symbols:

Venting

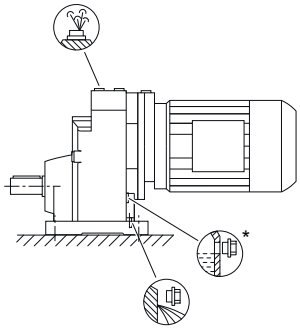
Oil level

Oil drain

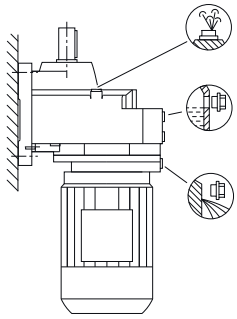
A, B Position of insert shaft / solid shaft
* On opposite side
① Oil level check not possible for tandem gearbox (main gearbox a)
② Two-stage gearbox
③ Three-stage gearbox

## 12.5.2 Single-stage helical gearboxes

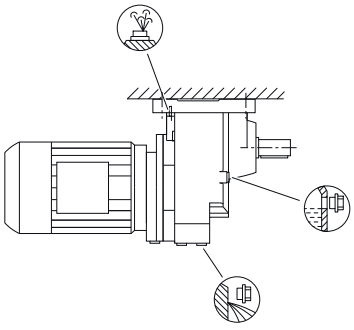
M1



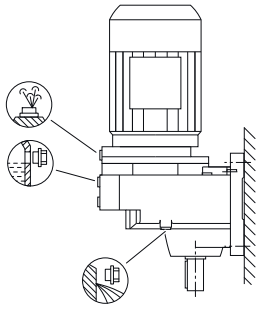

M2



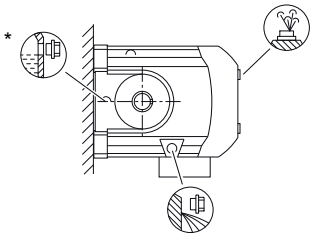
M3



M4



M5




M6

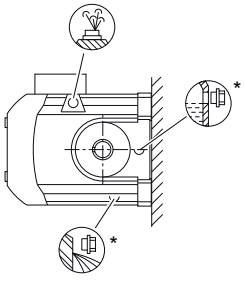
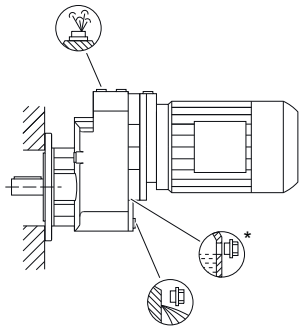
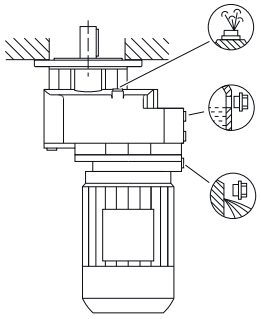



Figure 12-14 Mounting positions for helical gearbox E, foot-mounted design, sizes 39 - 149

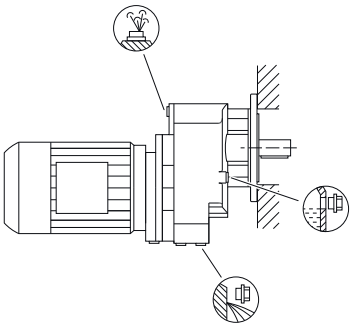
M1



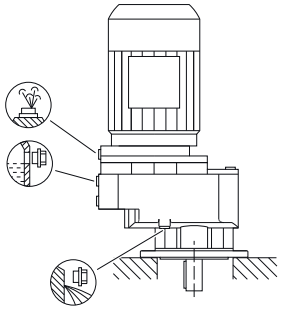

M2



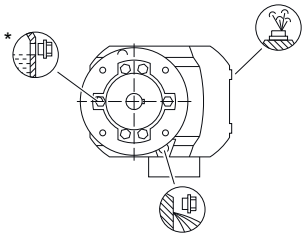
M3



M4



M5




M6

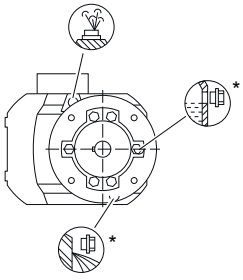



Figure 12-15 Mounting positions for helical gearbox EF/EZ, flange-mounted design, sizes 39 - 149

## 12.5.3 Two- and three-stage helical gearbox

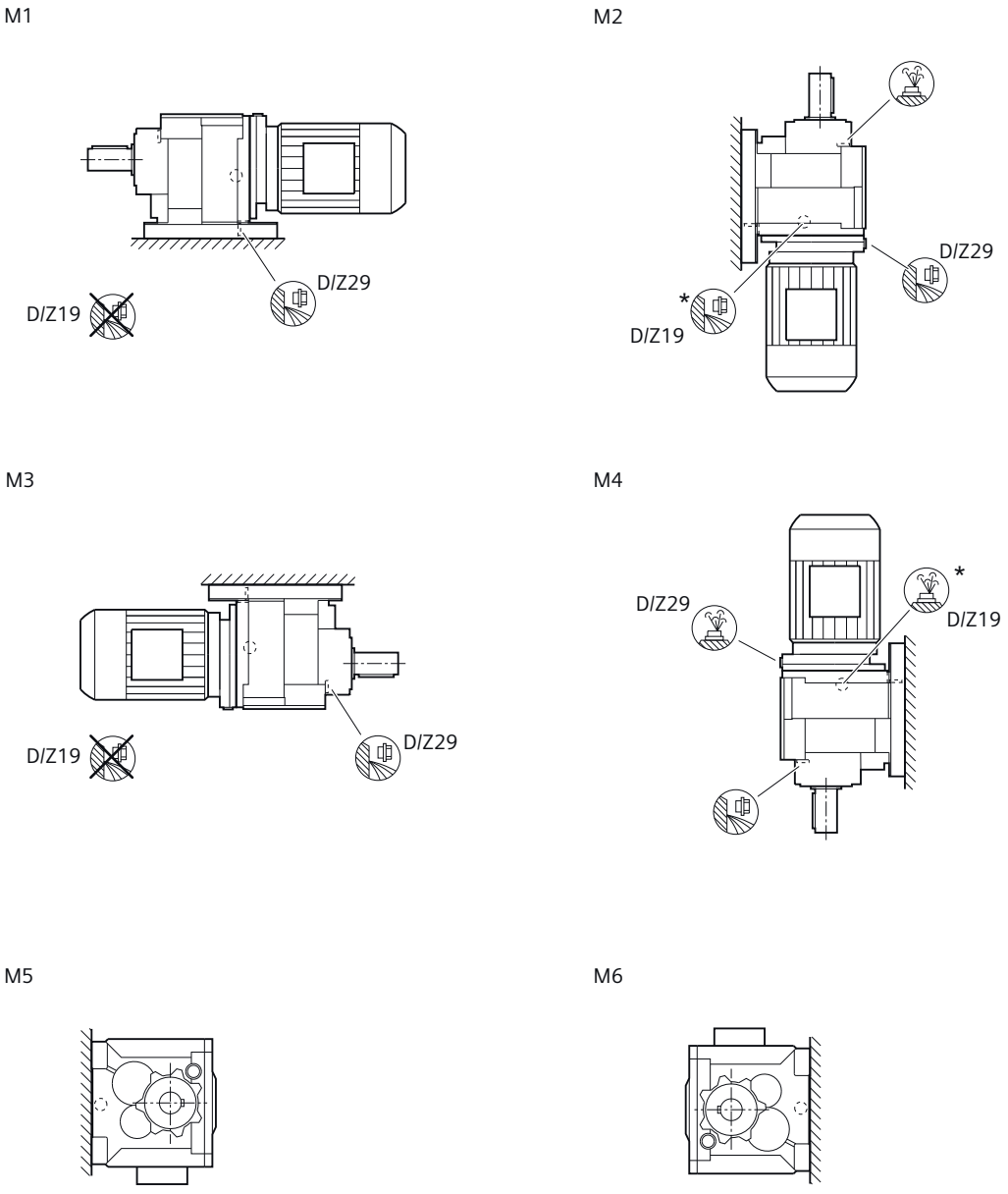
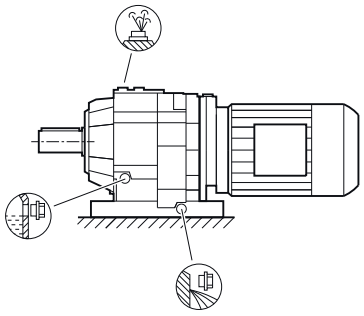
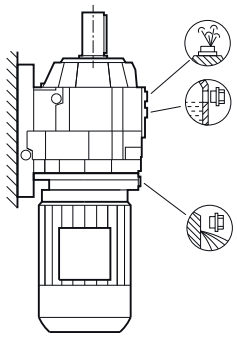



Figure 12-16 Mounting positions for helical gearbox D/Z foot-mounted design, sizes 19 - 29

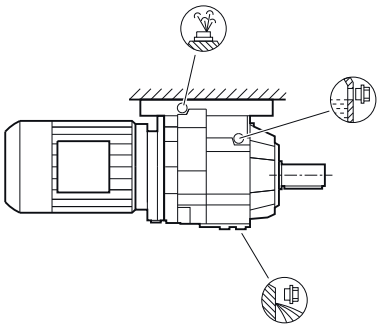
M1



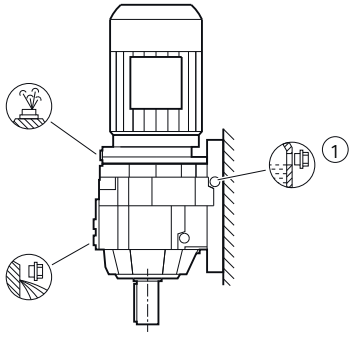
M2



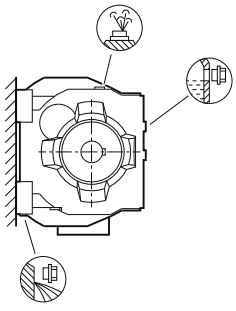
M3



M4




M5



M6

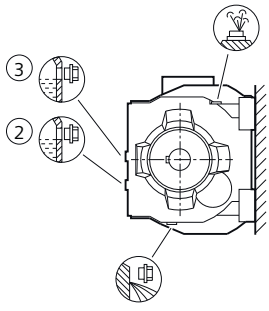
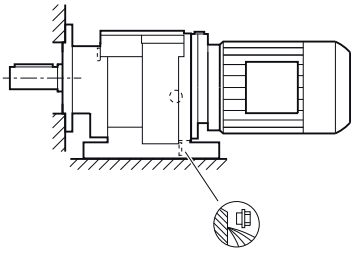
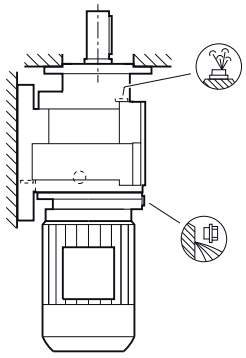



Figure 12-17 Mounting positions for helical gearbox D/Z foot-mounted design, sizes 39 - 189

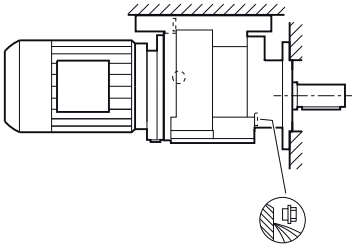
M1



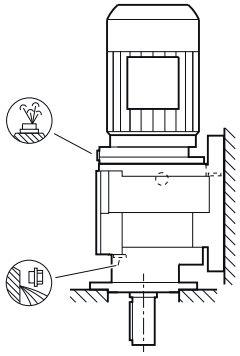
M2



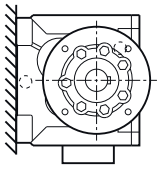
M3



M4



M5



M6

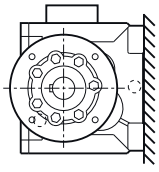
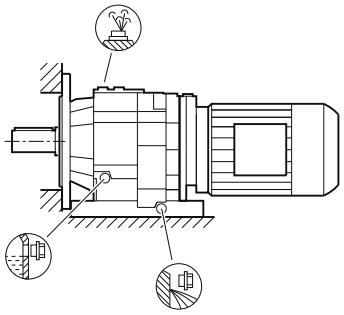
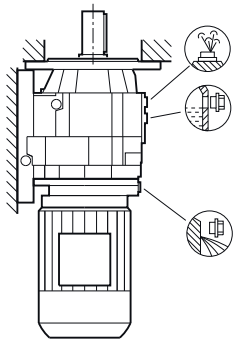


Figure 12-18 Mounting positions for helical gearbox DB/ZB foot / flange-mounted design, size 29

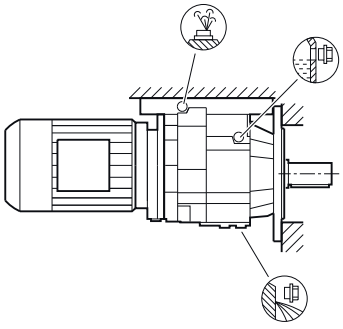
M1



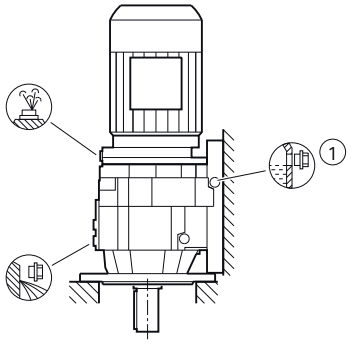
M2



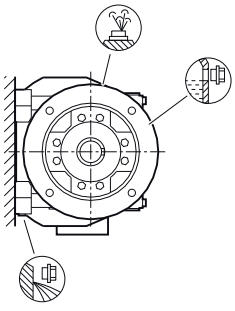
M3



M4




M5



M6

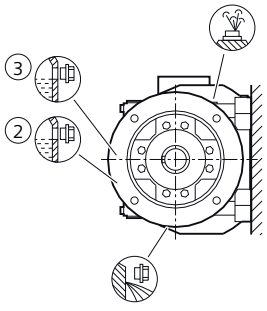
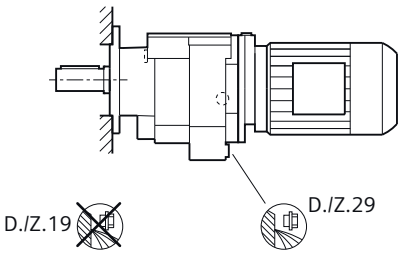
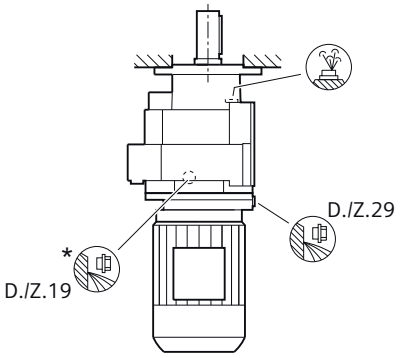



Figure 12-19 Mounting positions for helical gearbox DB/ZB foot / flange-mounted design, sizes 39 - 89

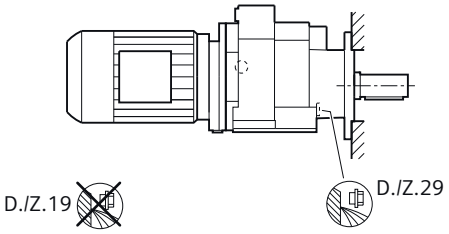
M1



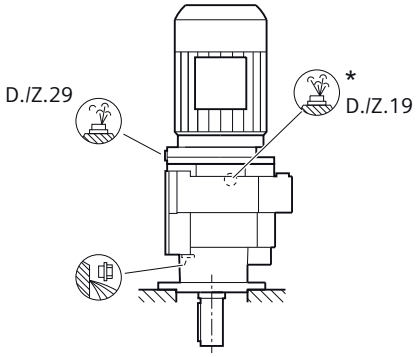

M2



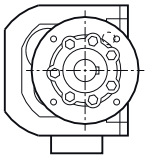

M3




M4




M5



M6

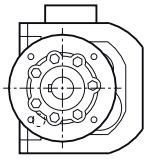
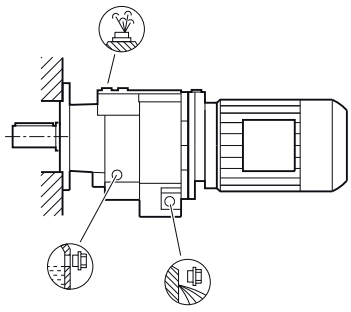
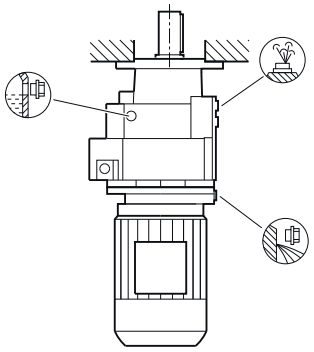


Figure 12-20 Mounting positions for helical gearbox DF/ZF flange-mounted design and DZ/ZZ with housing flange, sizes 19 - 29

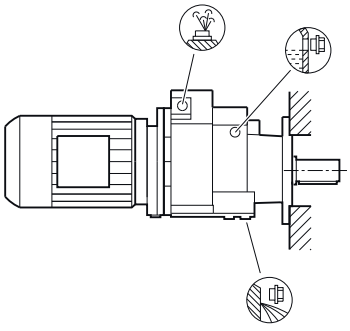
M1



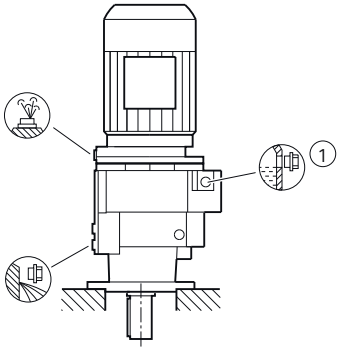
M2



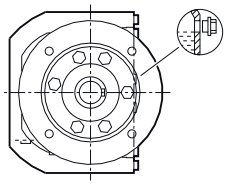
M3



M4




M5



M6

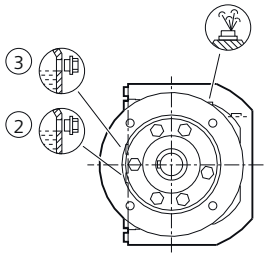
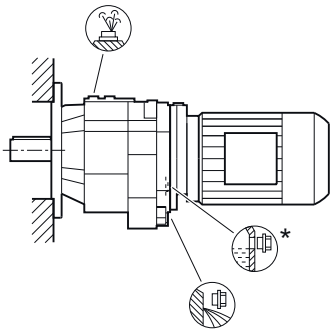
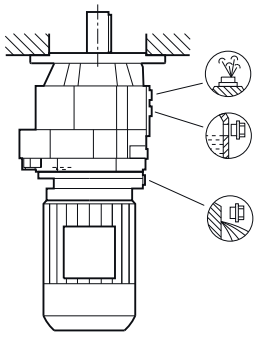



Figure 12-21 Mounting positions for helical gearbox DF/ZF flange-mounted design and DZ/ZZ with housing flange, size 39

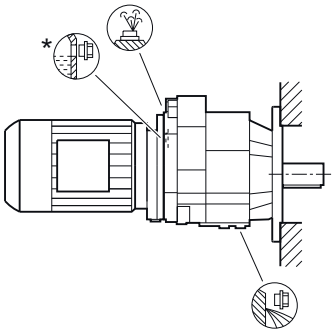
M1



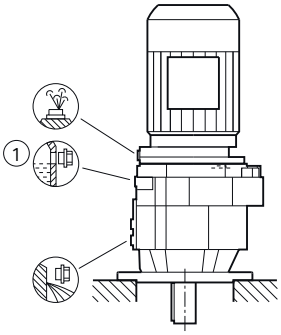

M2



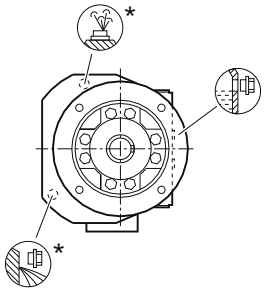
M3




M4




M5




M6

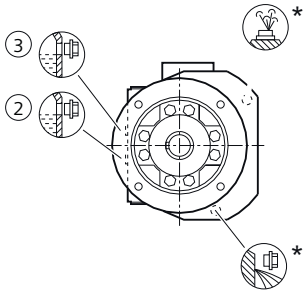
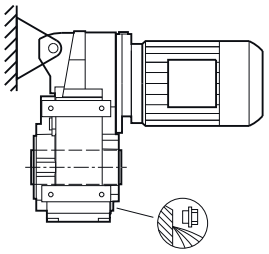


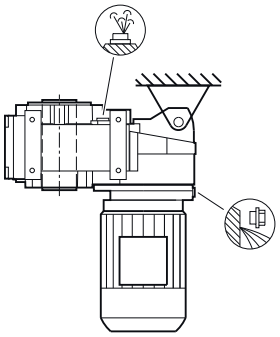

Figure 12-22 Mounting positions for helical gearbox DF/ZF flange-mounted design, sizes 49 - 189 and DZ/ZZ with housing flange, sizes 49 - 129

## 12.5.4 Parallel shaft gearbox

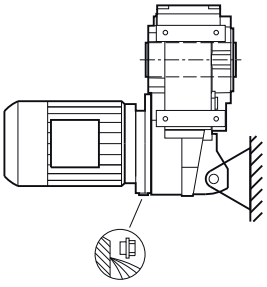
M1



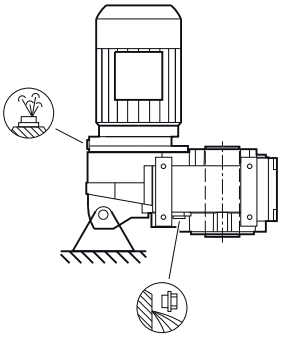
M2



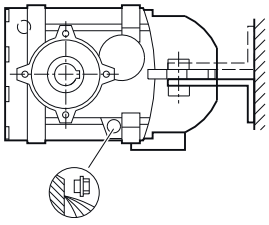
M3



M4



M5



M6

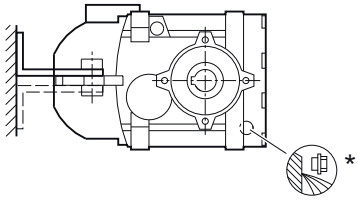
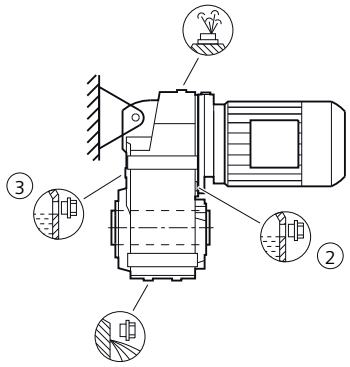
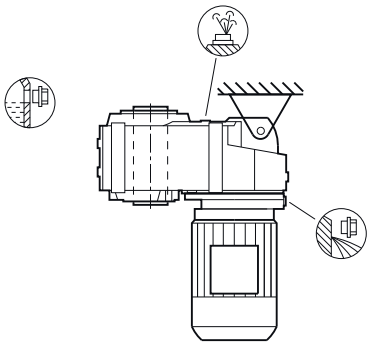



Figure 12-23 Mounting positions for parallel shaft gearbox F.AD shaft-mounted design, size 29

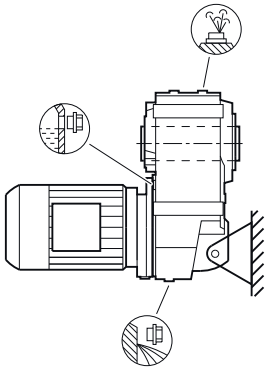
M1



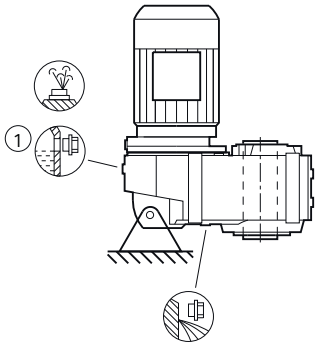

M2



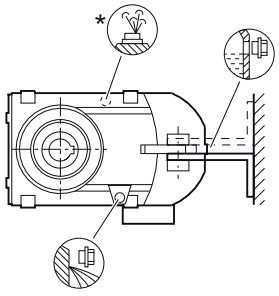
M3



M4




M5




M6

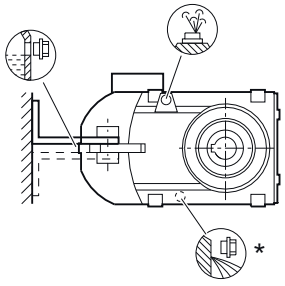
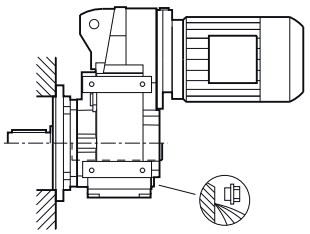
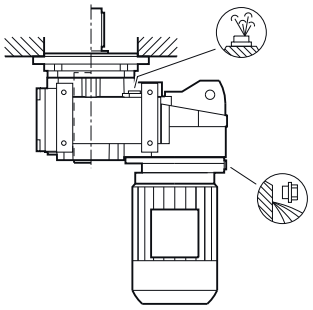



Figure 12-24 Mounting positions for parallel shaft gearbox F.AD shaft-mounted design, sizes 39 - 189

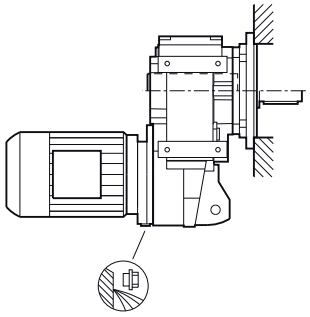
M1



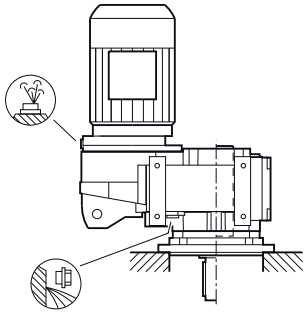
M2



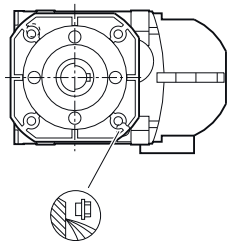
M3



M4



M5



M6

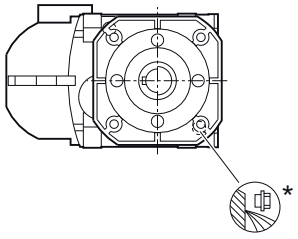
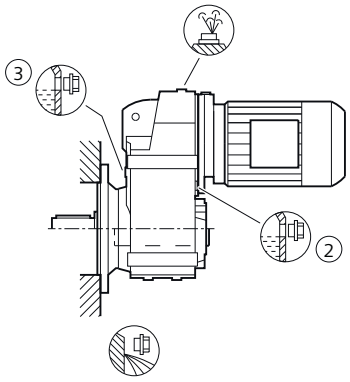
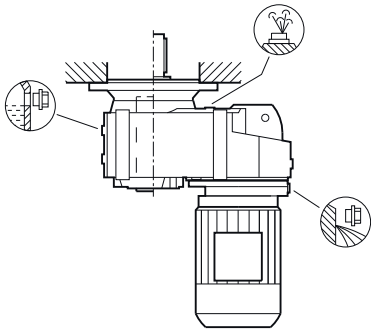



Figure 12-25 Mounting positions for parallel shaft gearbox F.F flange-mounted design and F.Z with housing flange, size 29

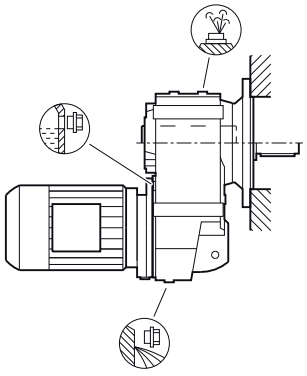
M1



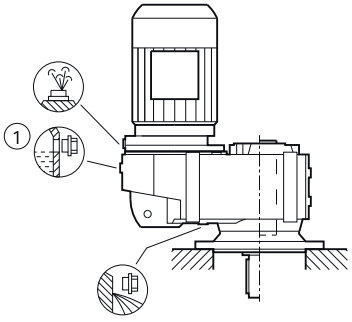

M2



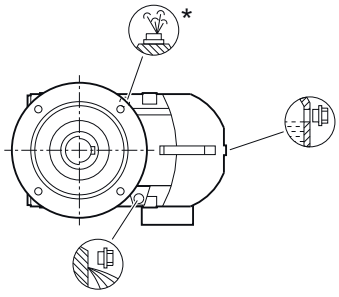
M3



M4




M5




M6

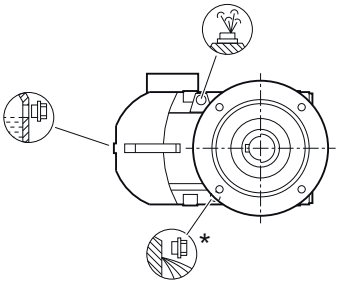



Figure 12-26 Mounting positions for parallel shaft gearbox F.F flange-mounted design and F.Z with housing flange, sizes 39 - 189

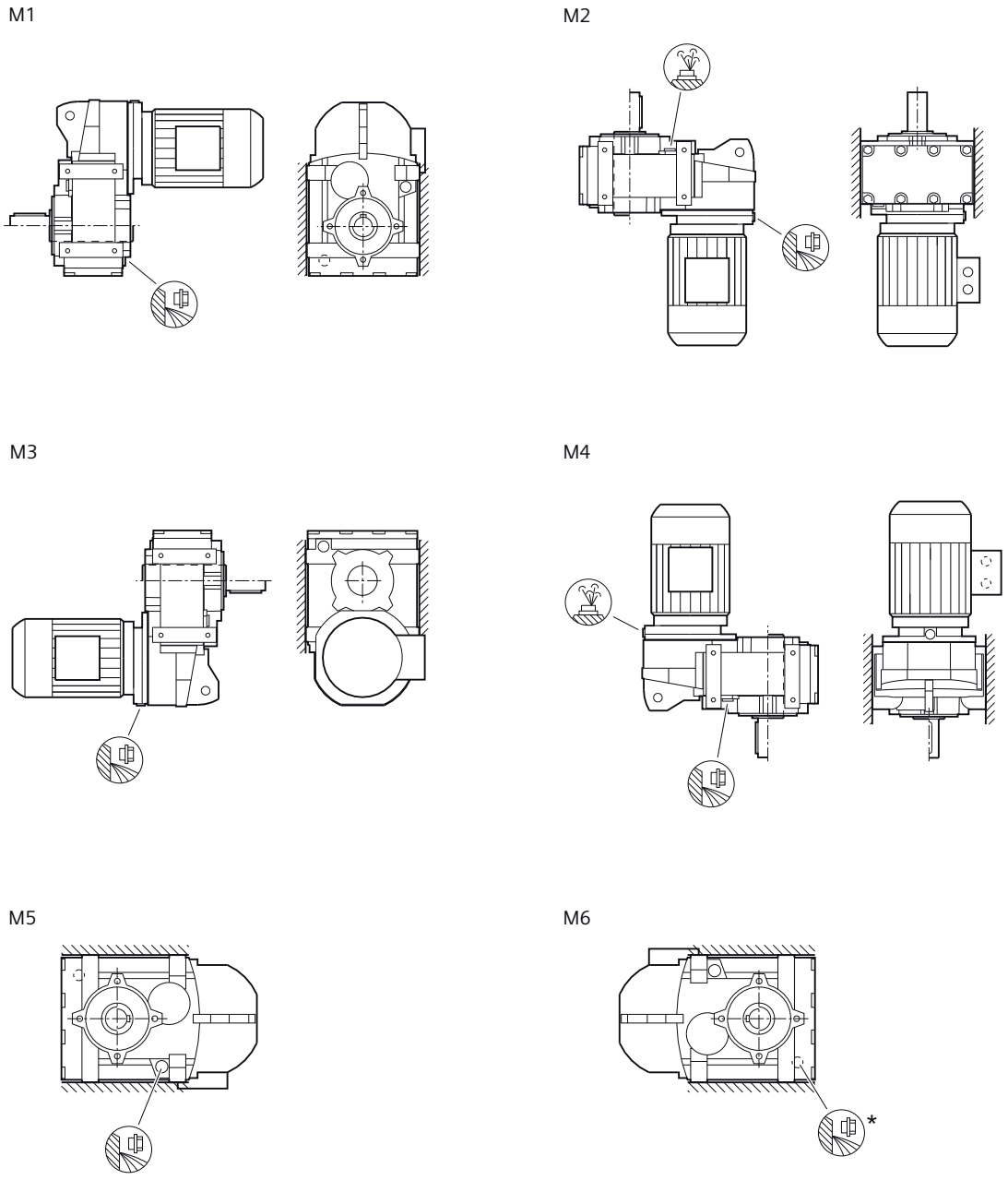



Figure 12-27 Mounting positions for parallel shaft gearbox F foot-mounted design, size 29

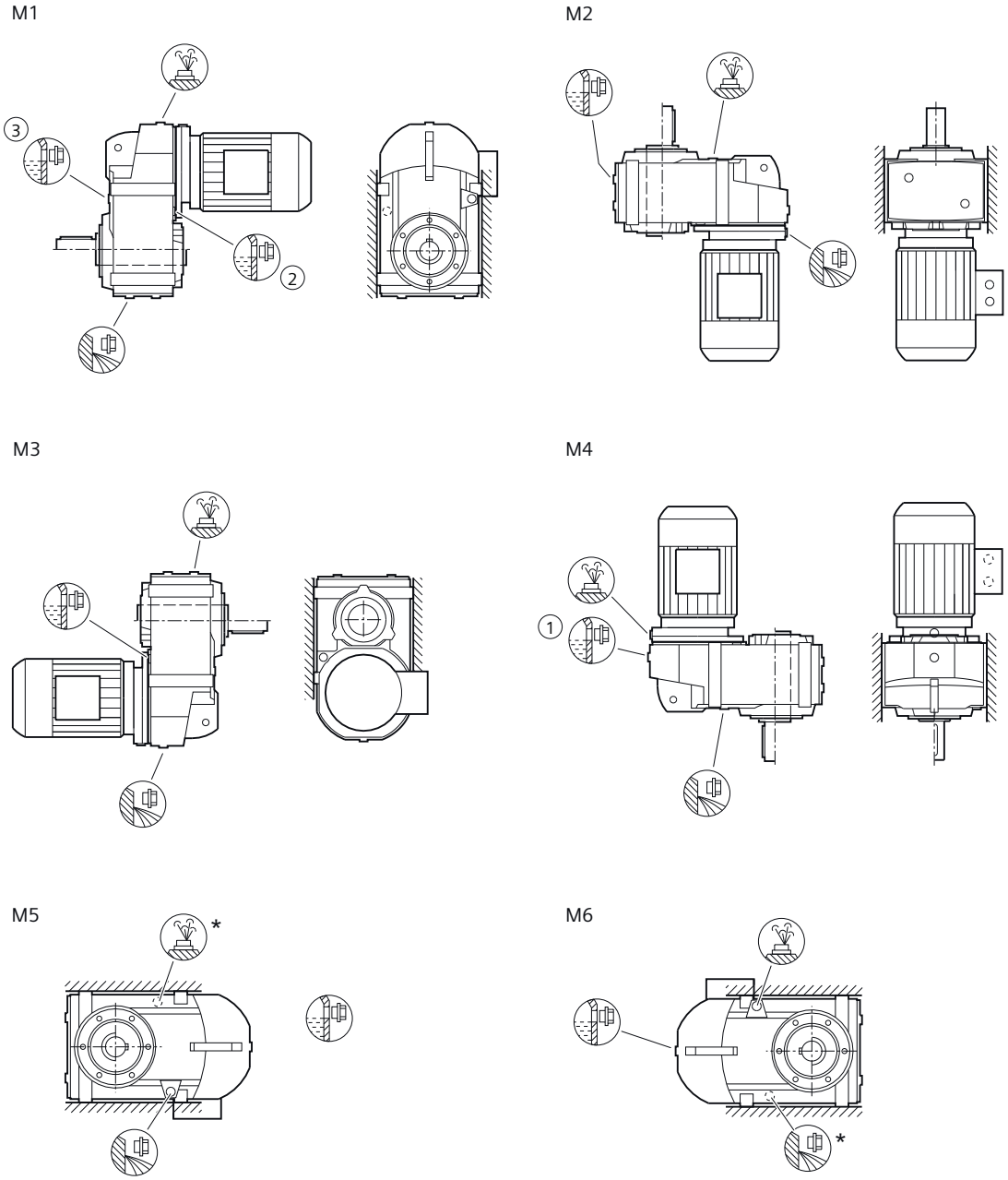



Figure 12-28 Mounting positions for parallel shaft gearbox F. foot-mounted design, sizes 39 - 189

## 12.5.5 Bevel gearbox

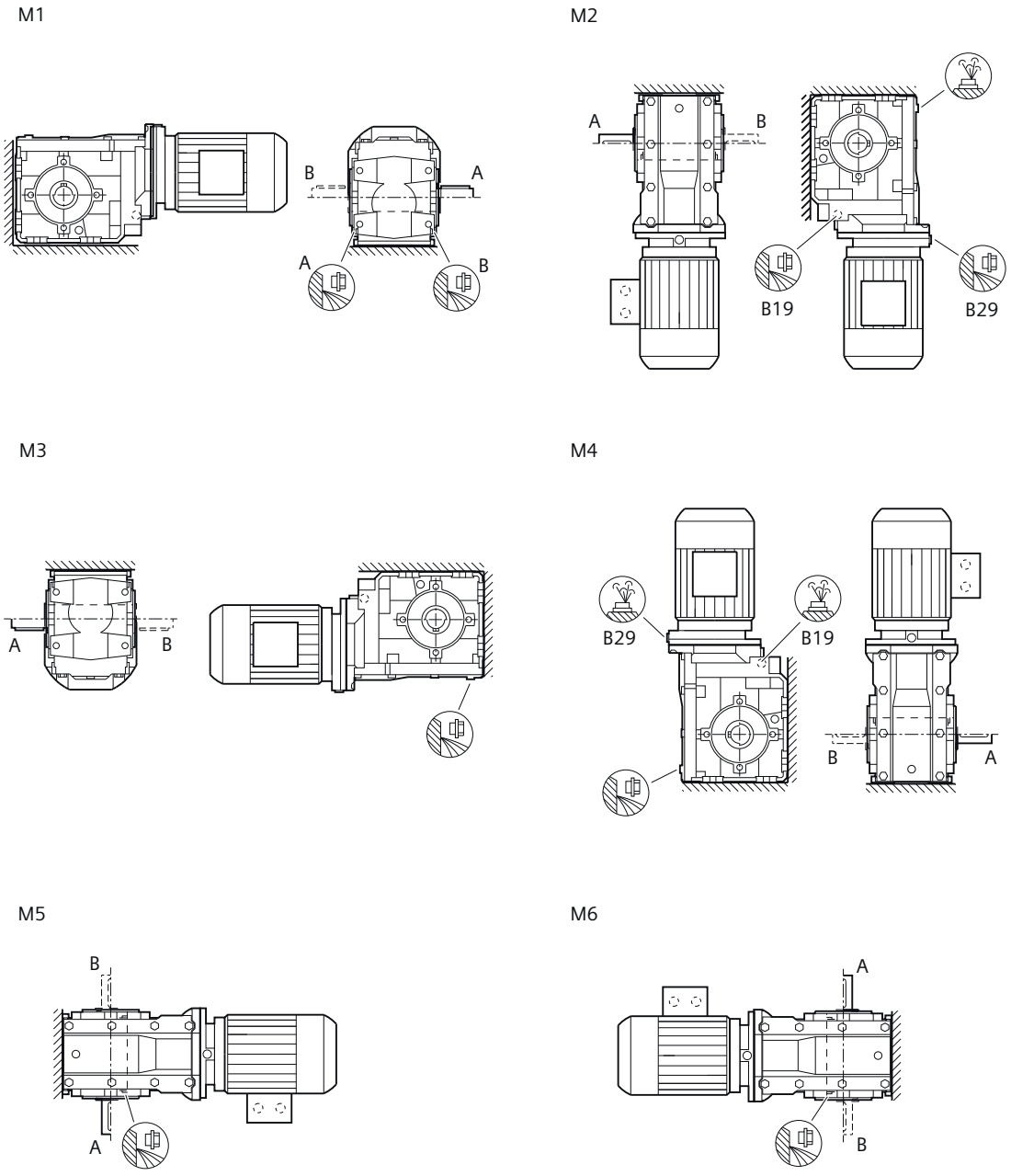



Figure 12-29 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox B foot-mounted design, sizes 19 - 29

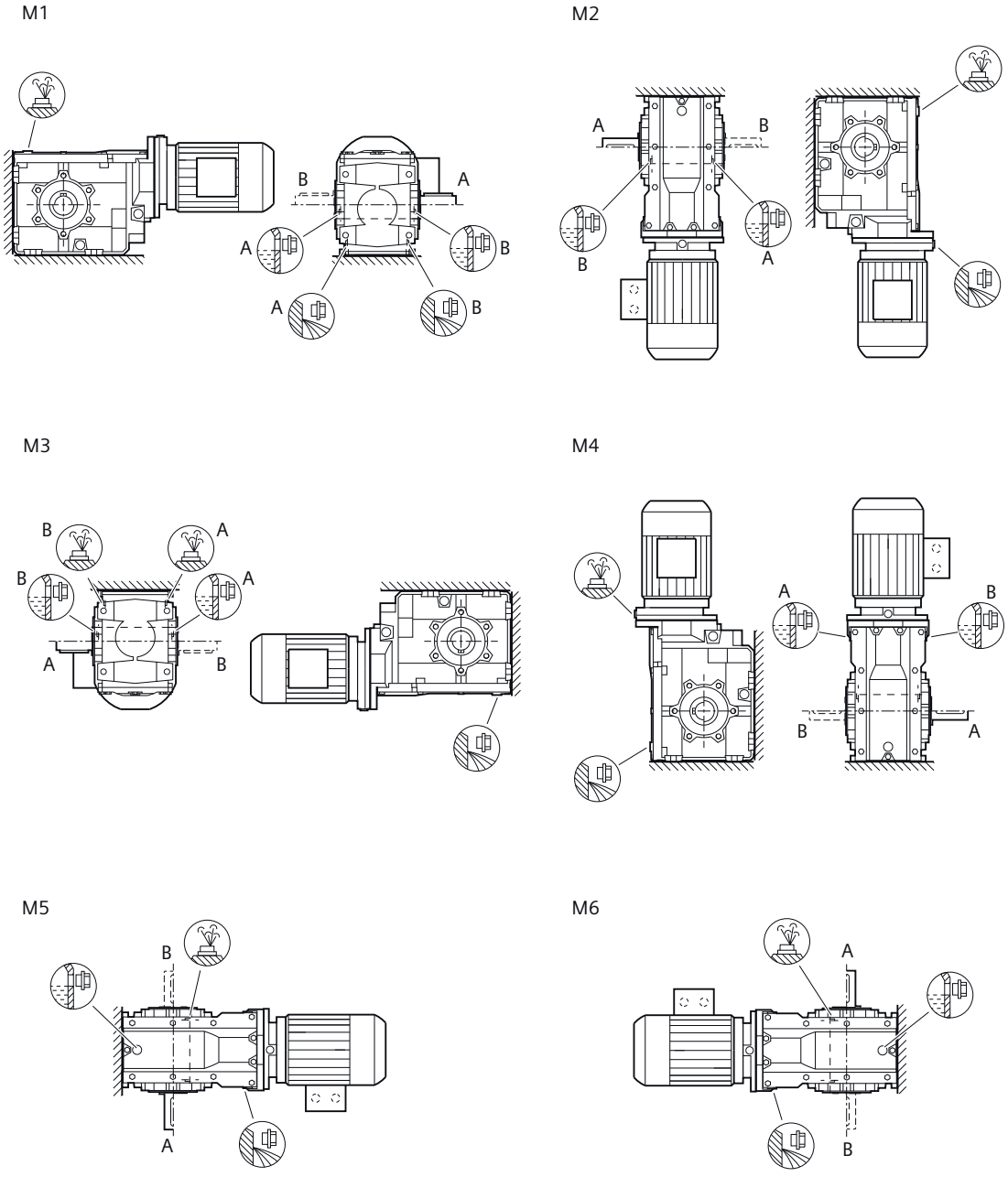



Figure 12-30 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox B foot-mounted design, sizes 39 - 49

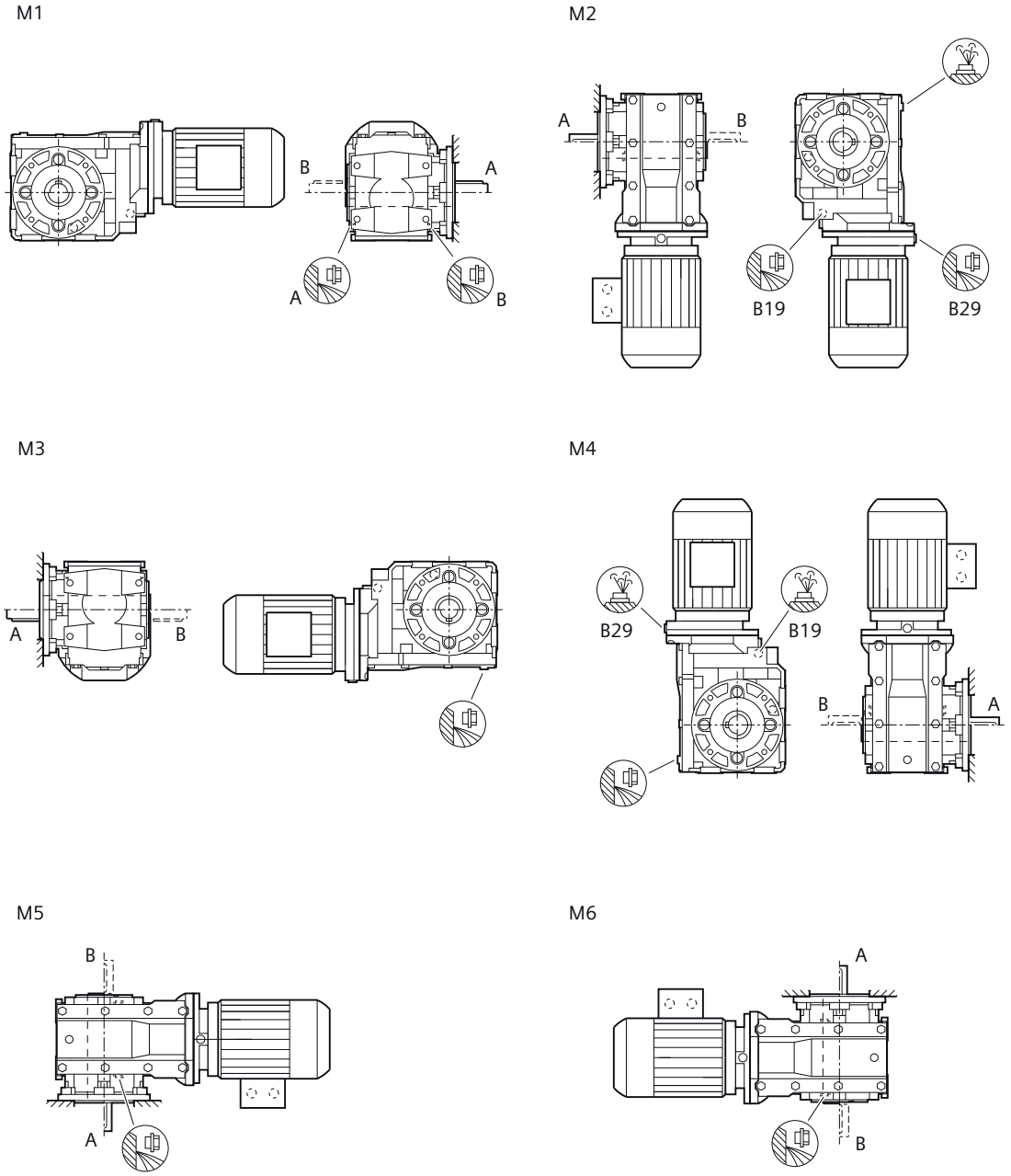



Figure 12-31 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox B.F flange-mounted design and B.Z with housing flange, sizes 19 - 29

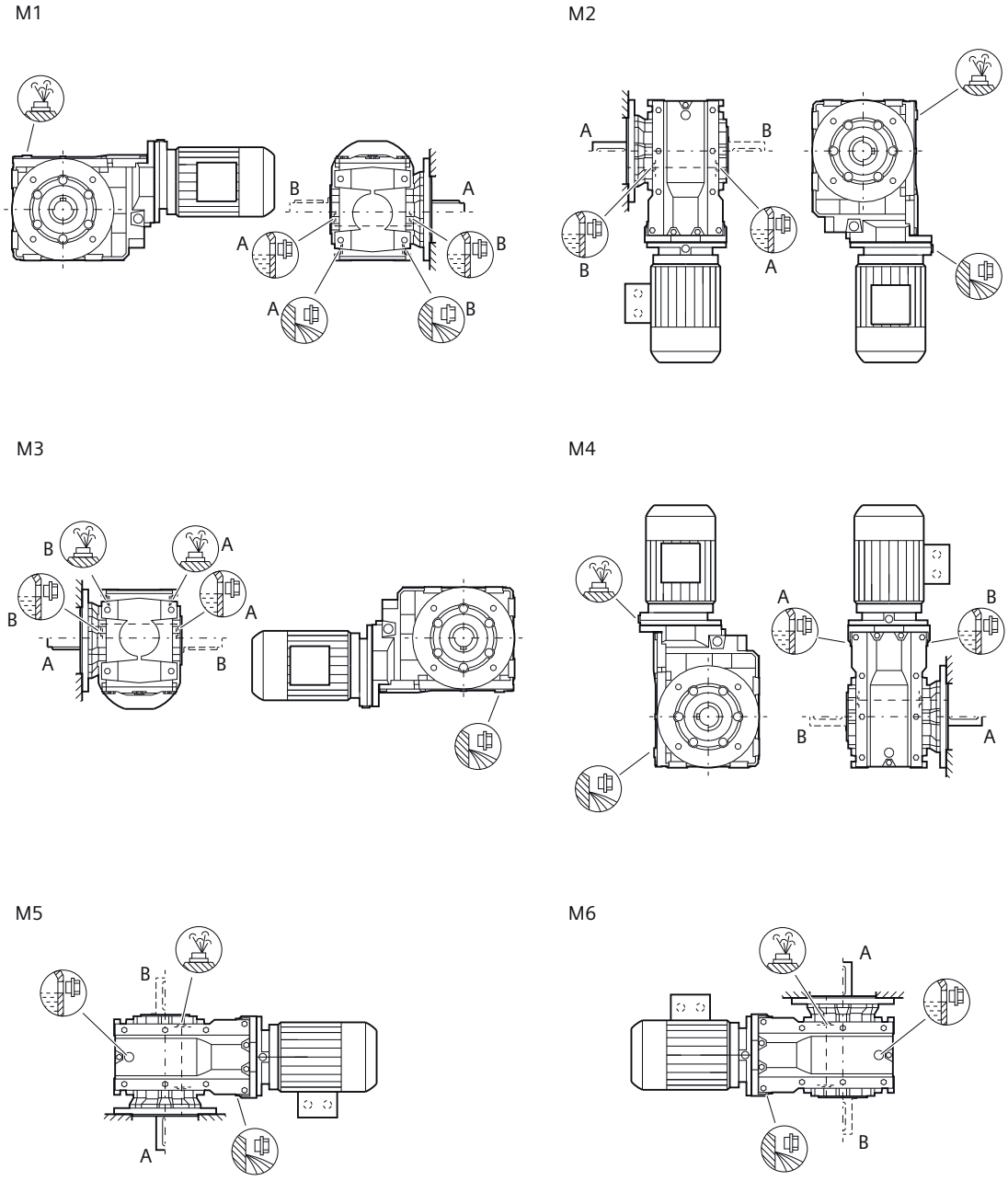



Figure 12-32 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox B.F flange-mounted design and B.Z with housing flange, sizes 39 - 49

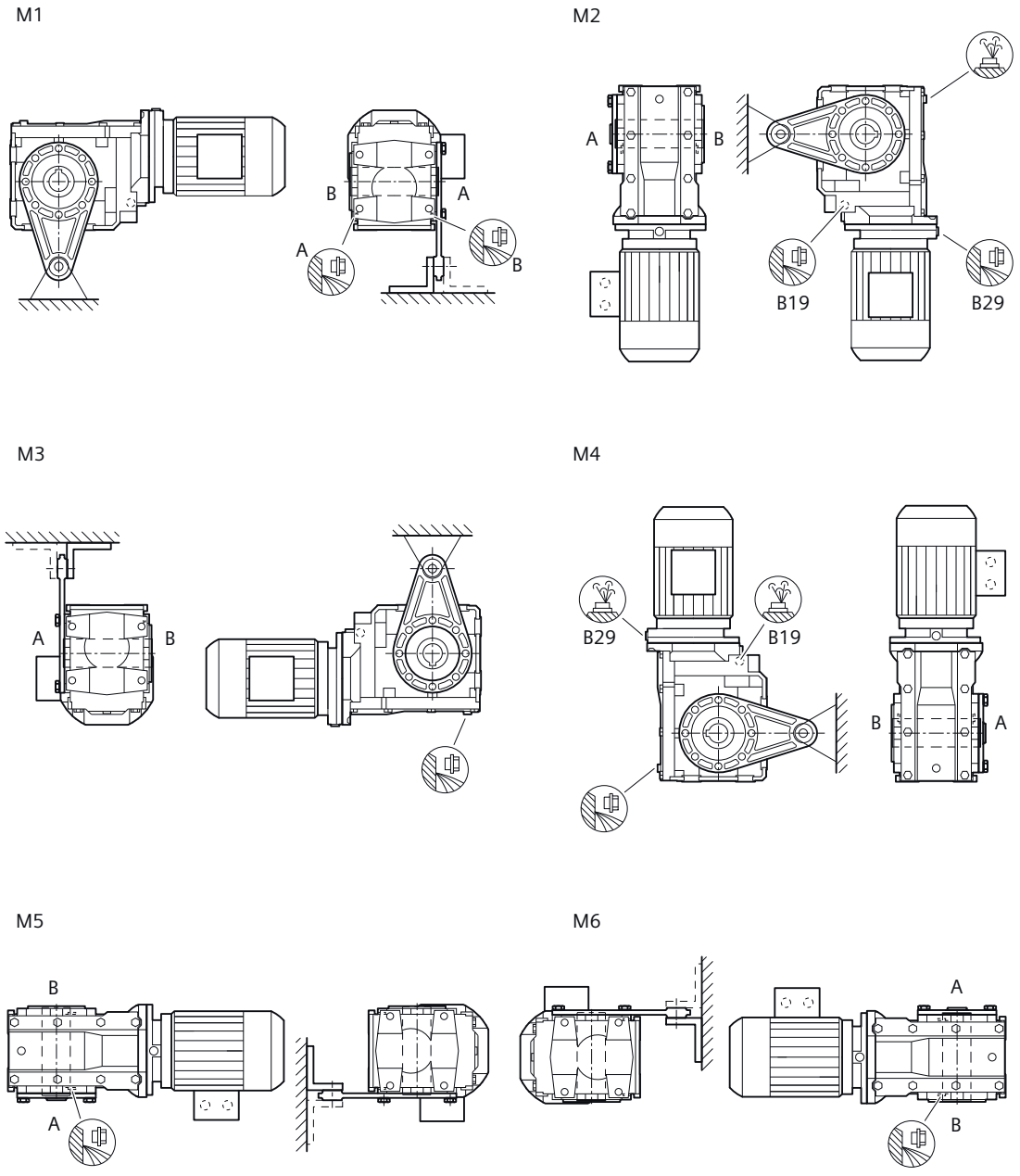



Figure 12-33 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox BAD shaft-mounted design, sizes 19 - 29

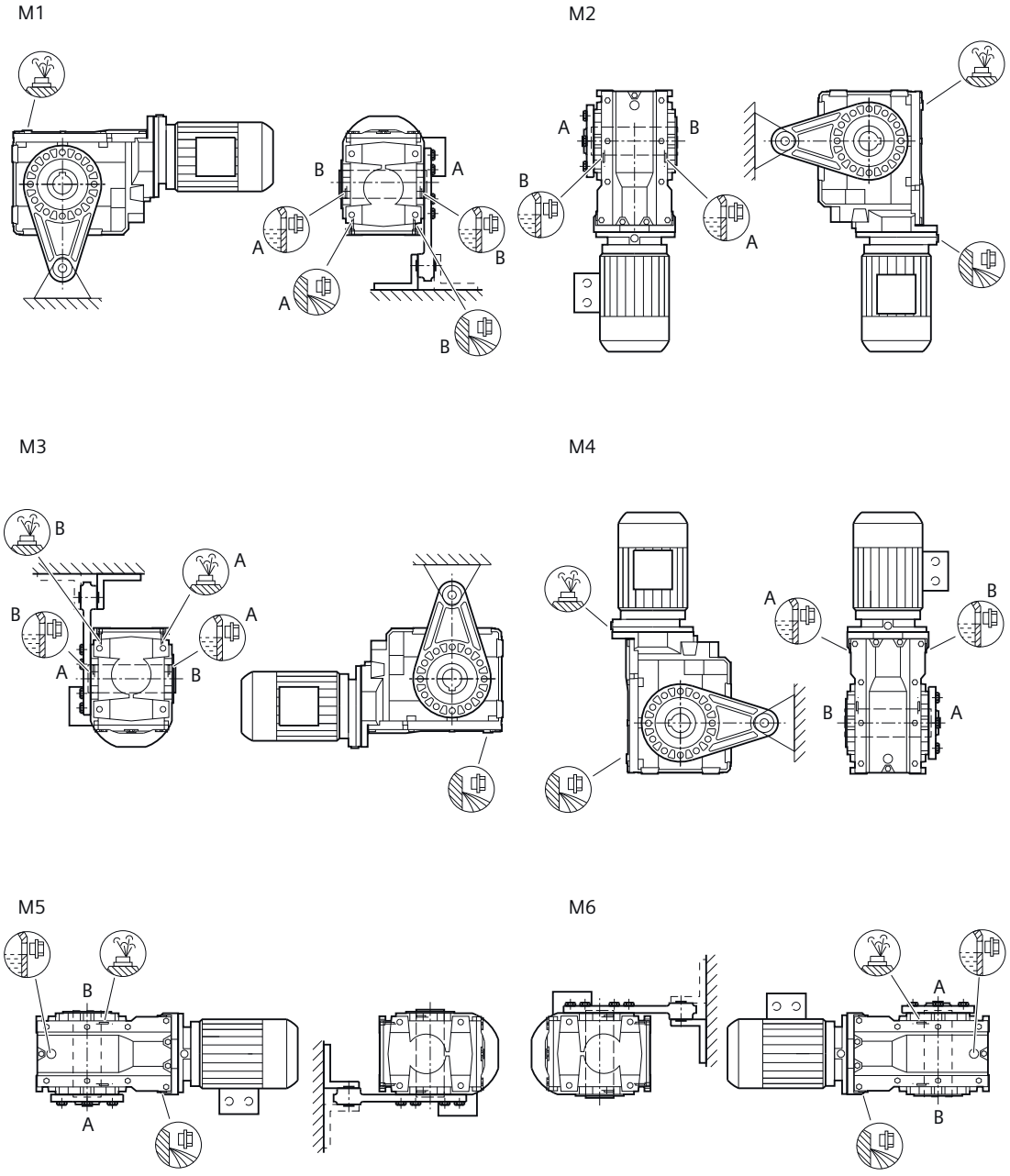



Figure 12-34 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox BAD shaft-mounted design, sizes 39 - 49

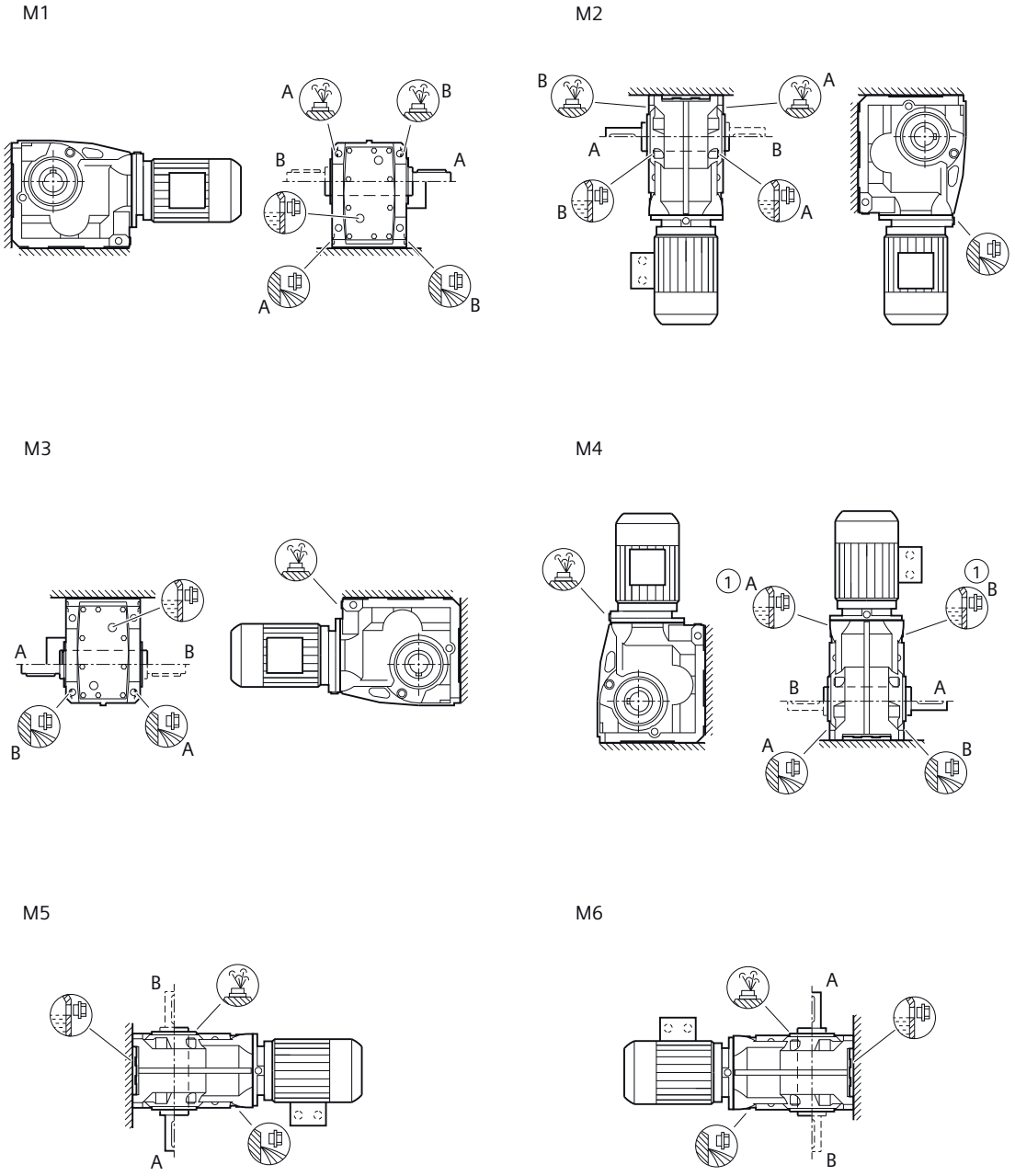



Figure 12-35 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox K. foot-mounted design, sizes 39 - 189

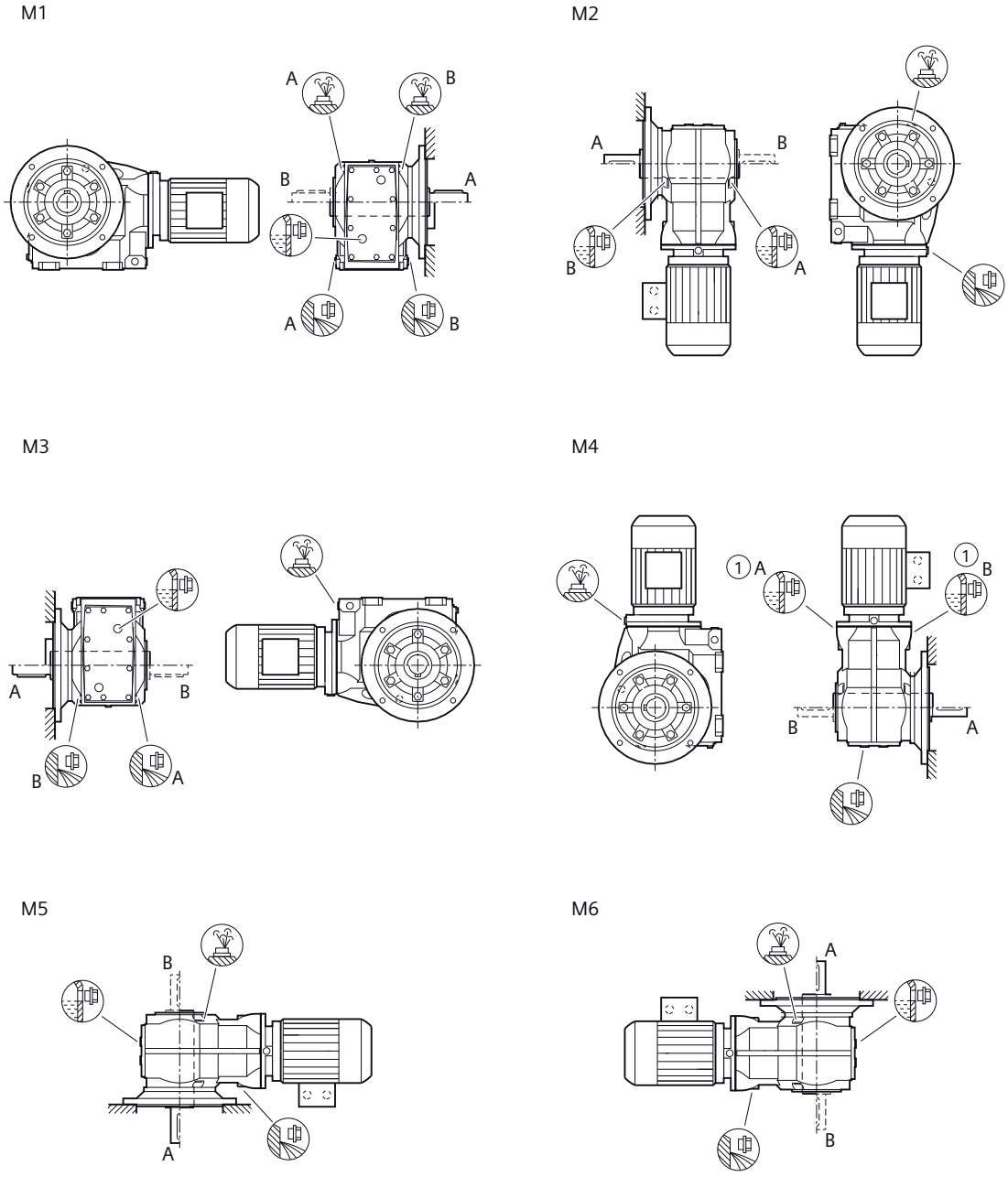



Figure 12-36 Mounting positions for bevel gearbox K.F flange-mounted design and KAZ with housing flange, sizes 39 - 189

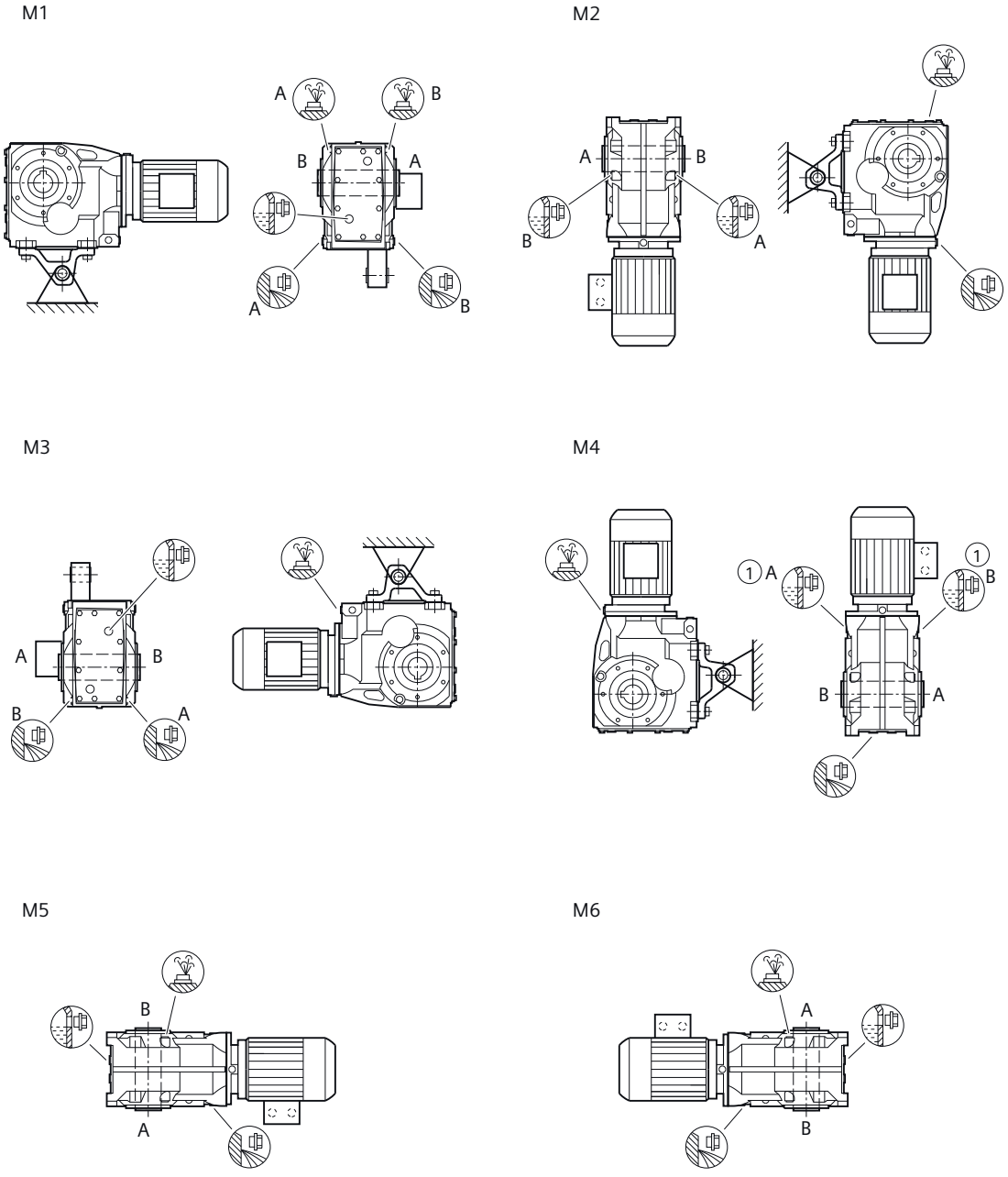



Figure 12-37 Mounting positions for bevel gearboxes KAD shaft-mounted design, sizes 39 - 189

## 12.5.6 Helical worm gearbox

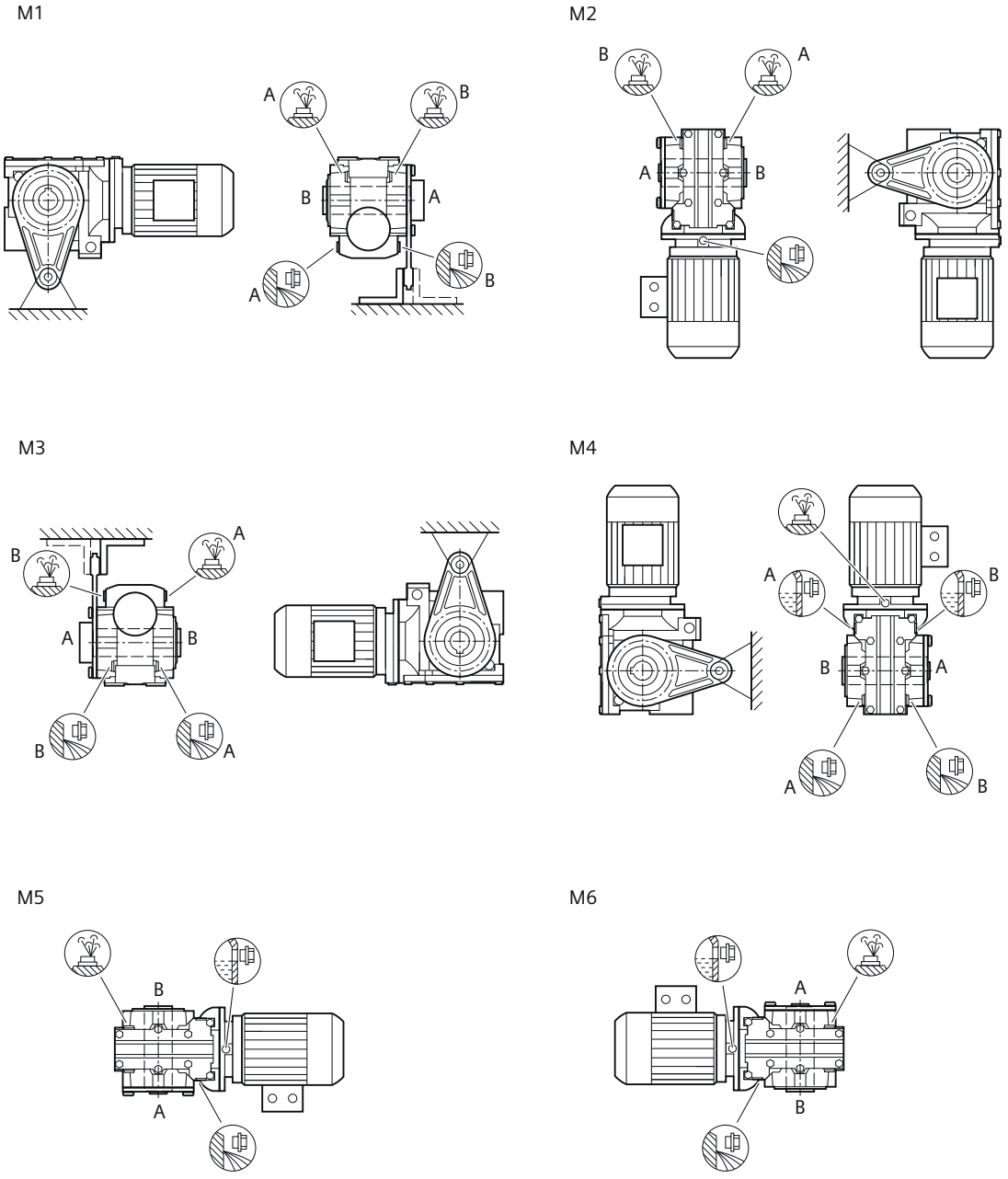



Figure 12-38 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox CAD shaft-mounted design, size 29

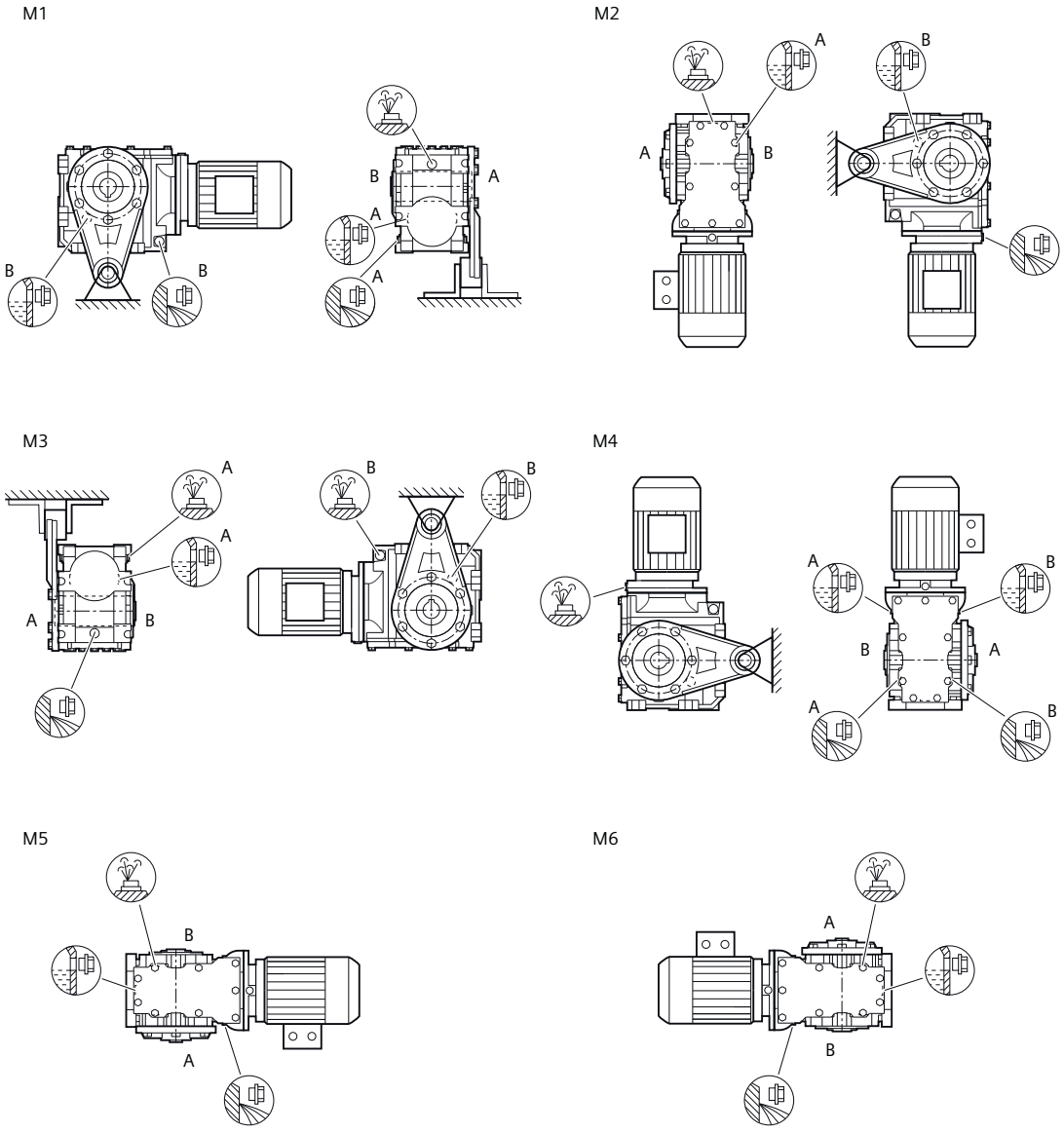



Figure 12-39 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox CAD shaft-mounted design, size 39A

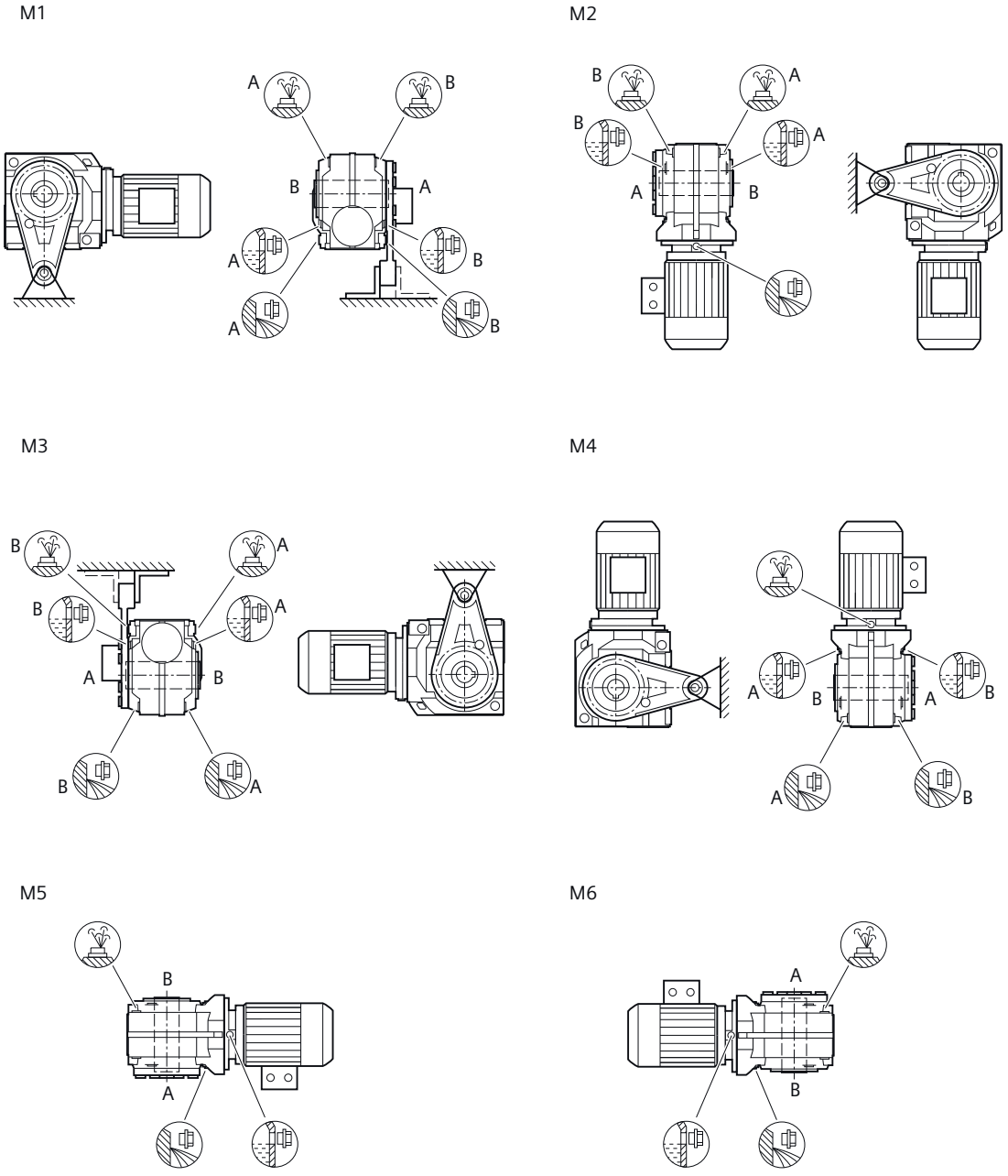



Figure 12-40 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox CAD shaft-mounted design, sizes 39 - 89

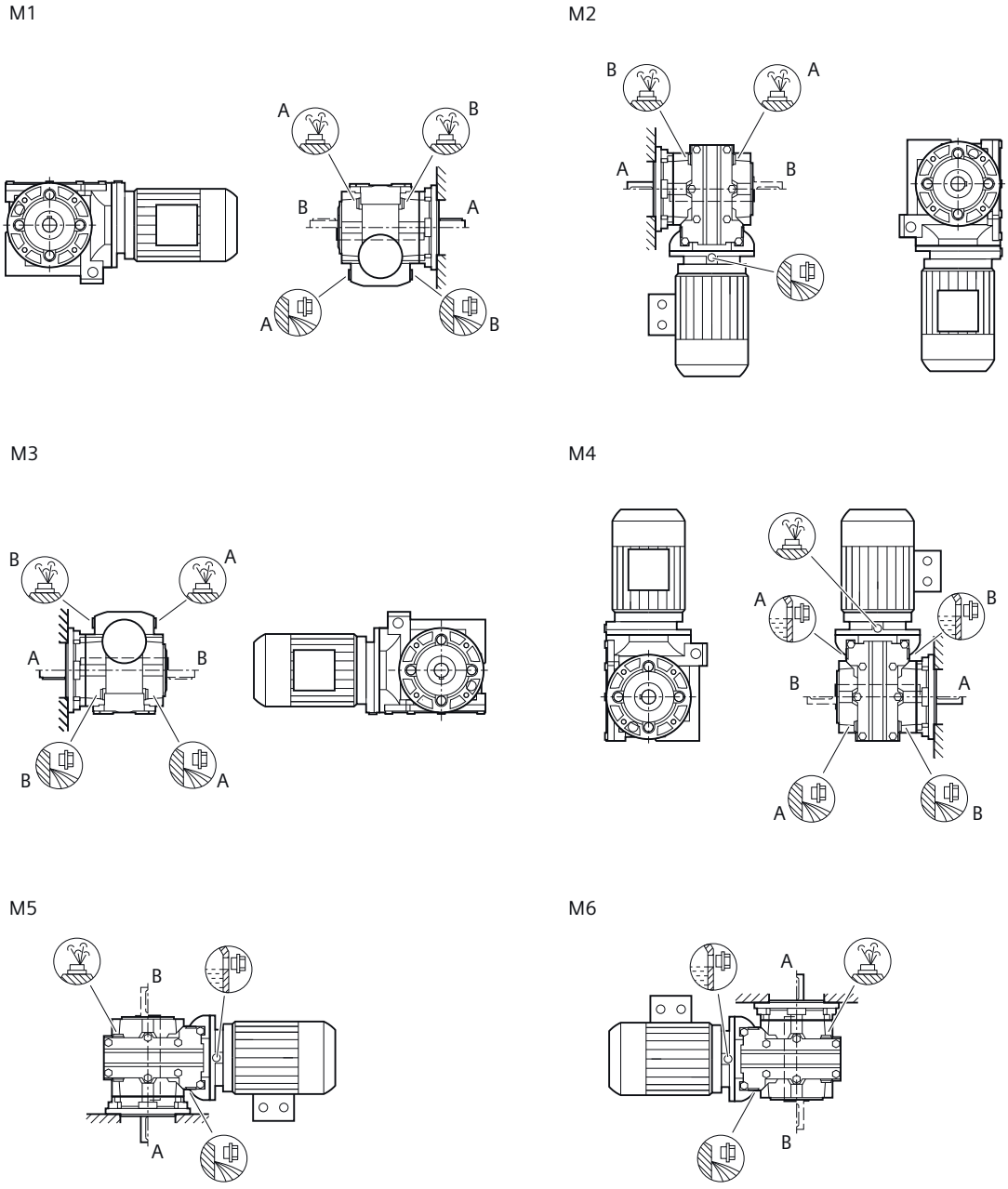



Figure 12-41 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox CF flange-mounted design and CAZ housing flange, size 29

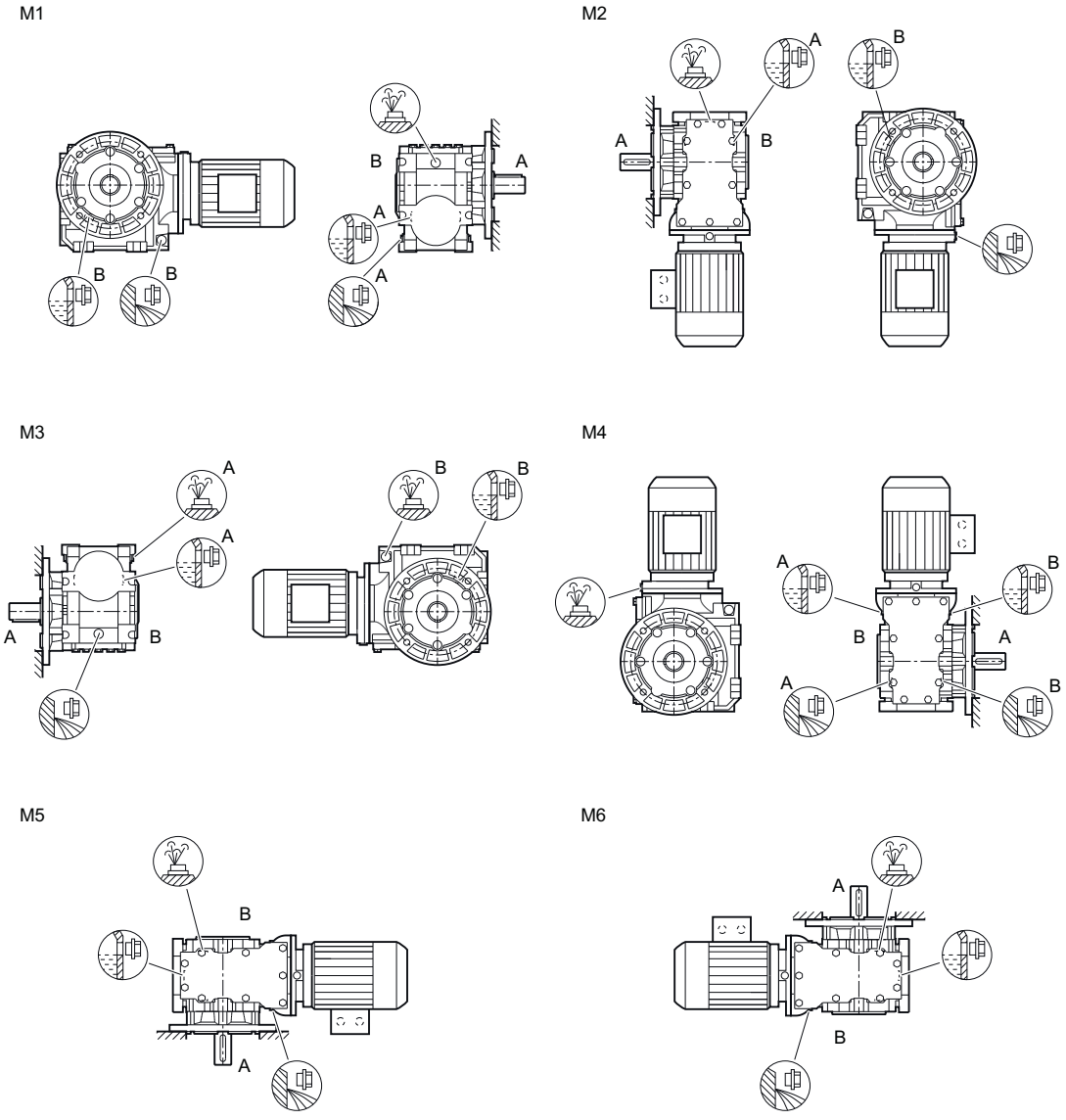



Figure 12-42 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox CF flange-mounted design and CAZ housing flange, size 39A

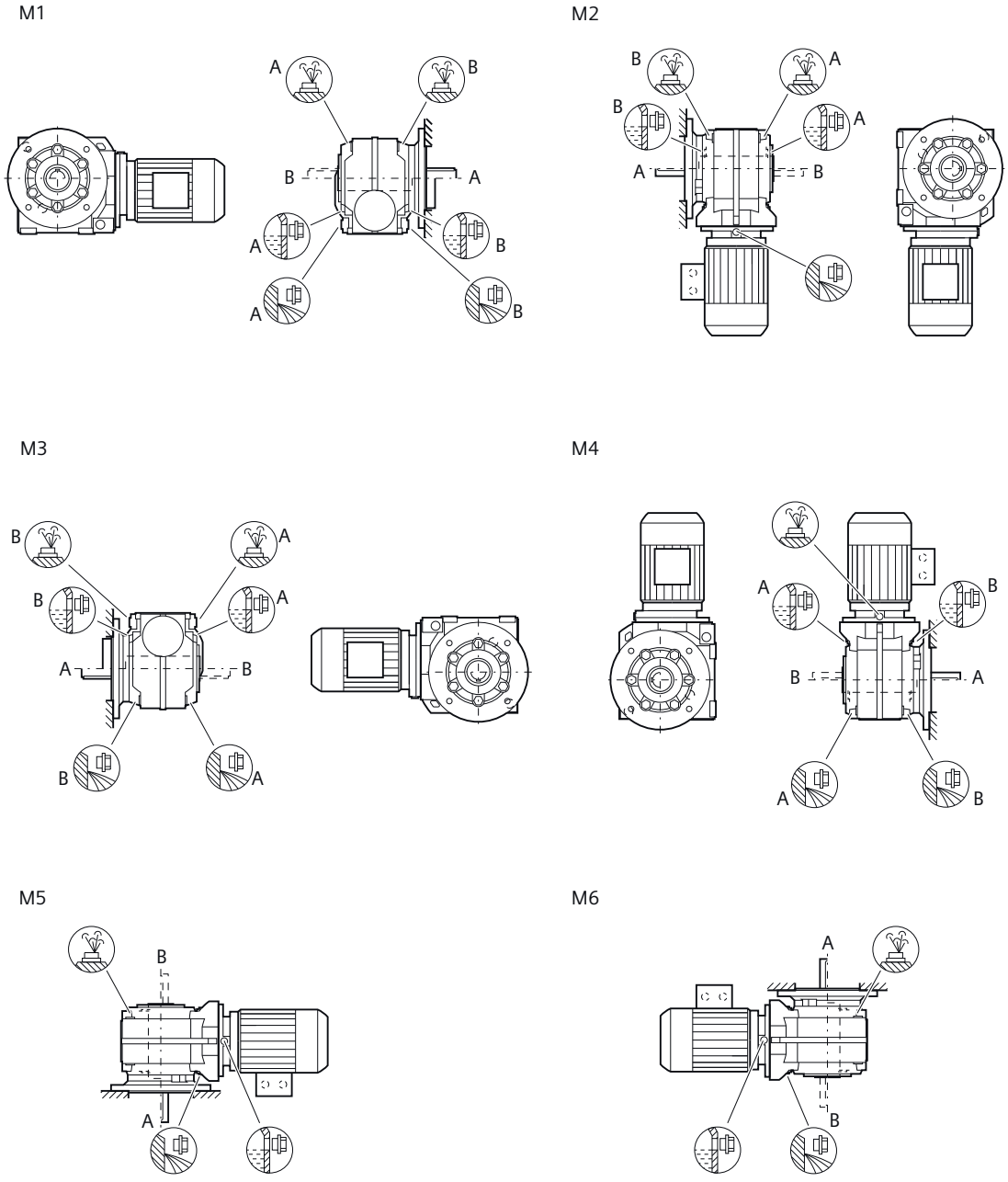



Figure 12-43 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox CF flange-mounted design and CAZ housing flange, sizes 39 - 89

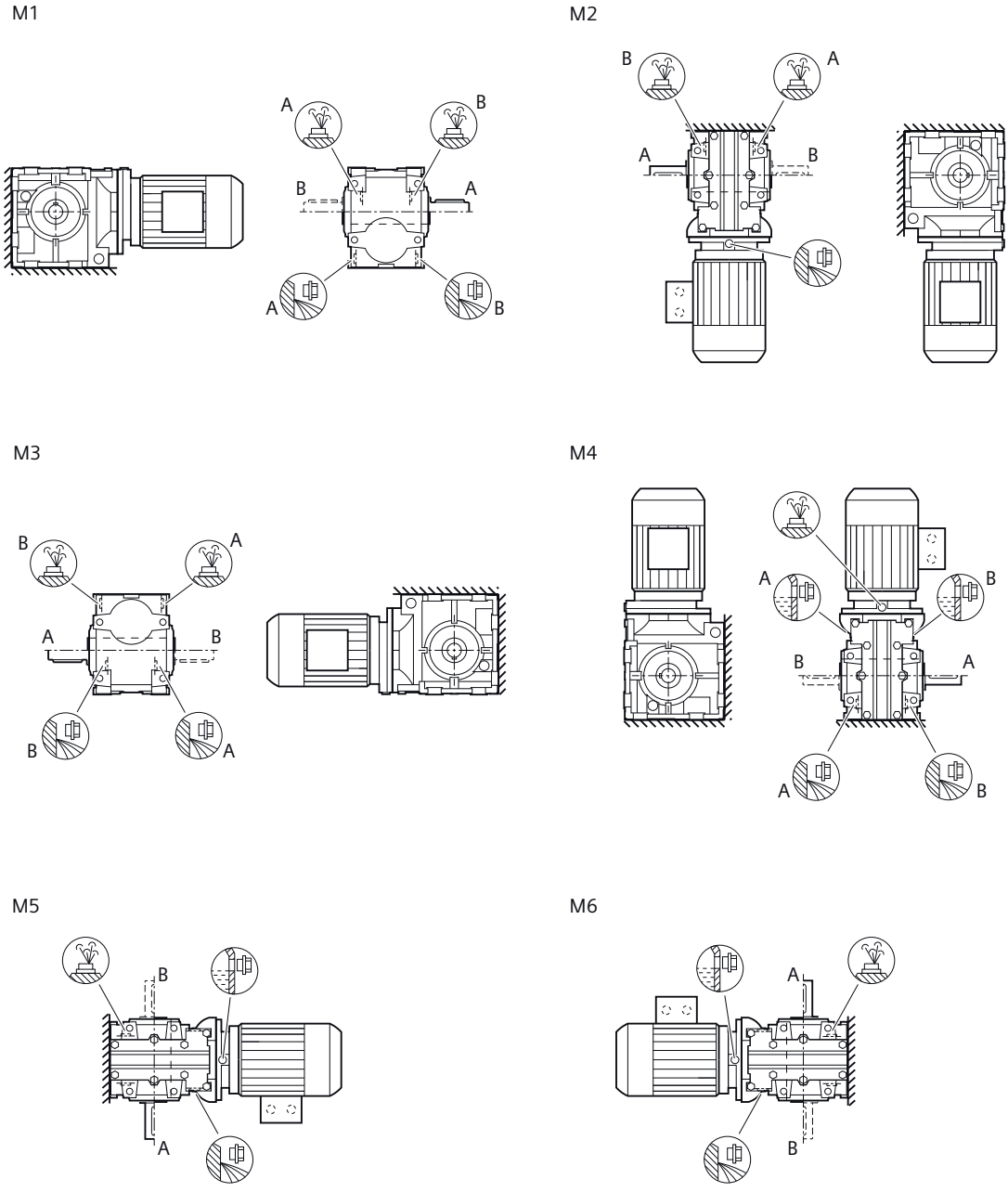



Figure 12-44 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox C. foot-mounted design, size 29

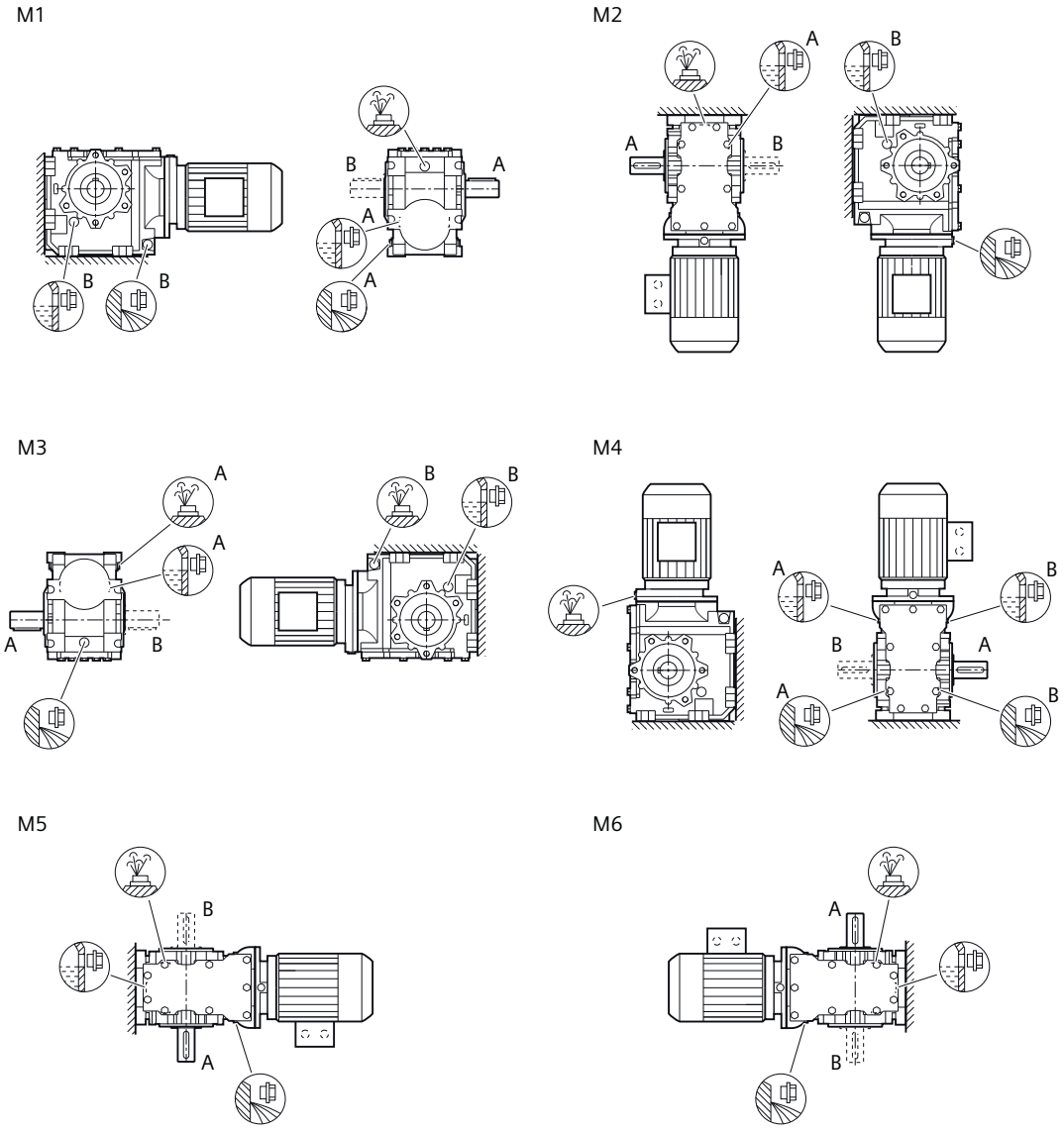



Figure 12-45 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox C. foot-mounted design, size 39A

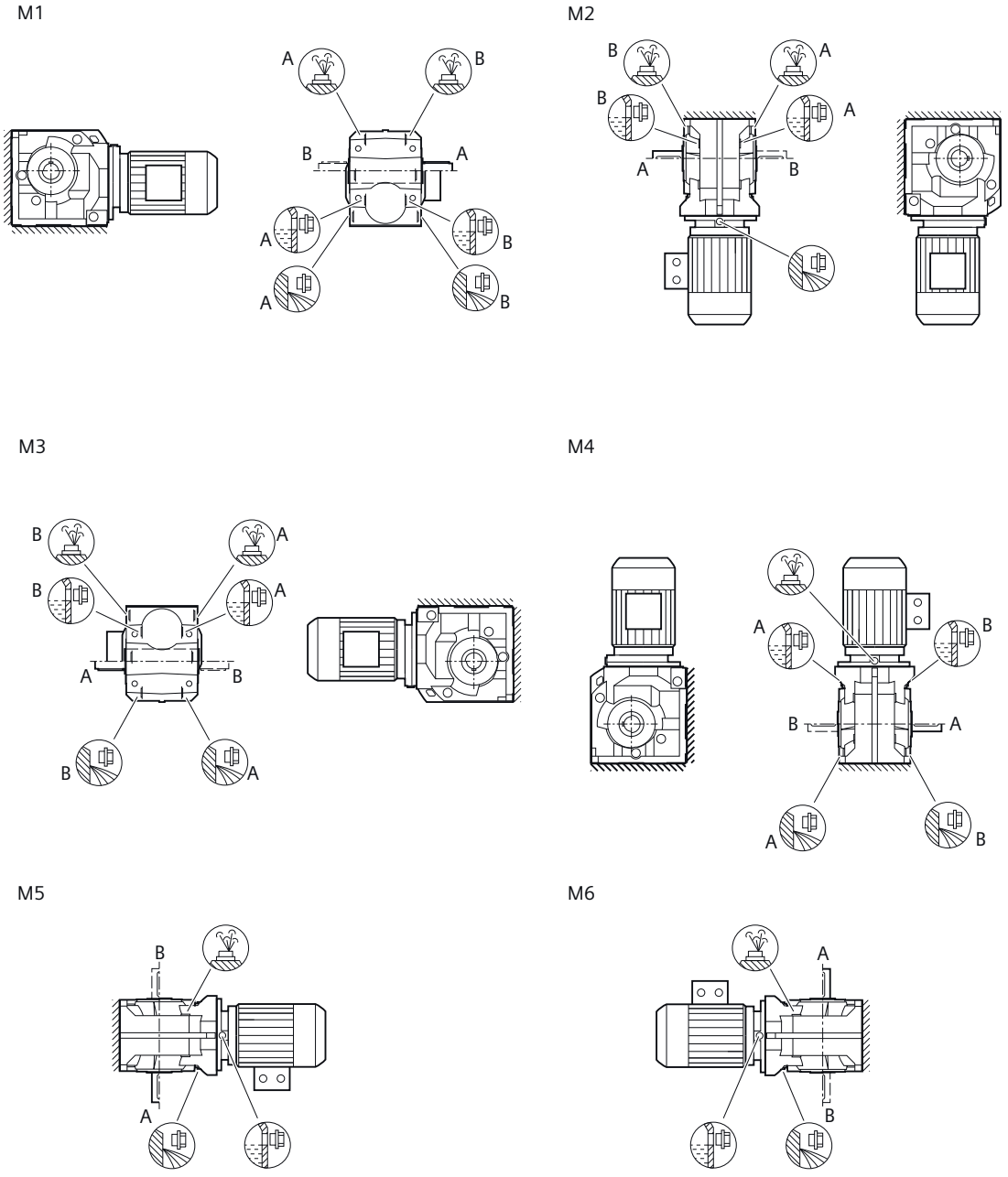



Figure 12-46 Mounting positions for helical worm gearbox C. foot-mounted design, sizes 39 - 89

## 12.5.7 Worm gearbox

**Note**

Gearboxes are lubricated for life. There are no openings to check the oil level.

The lubrication for life has been designed to enable the gearbox to be operated in all the frame sizes and mounting positions shown.

M0 is a universal mounting position. The geared motor can be installed in all mounting positions.

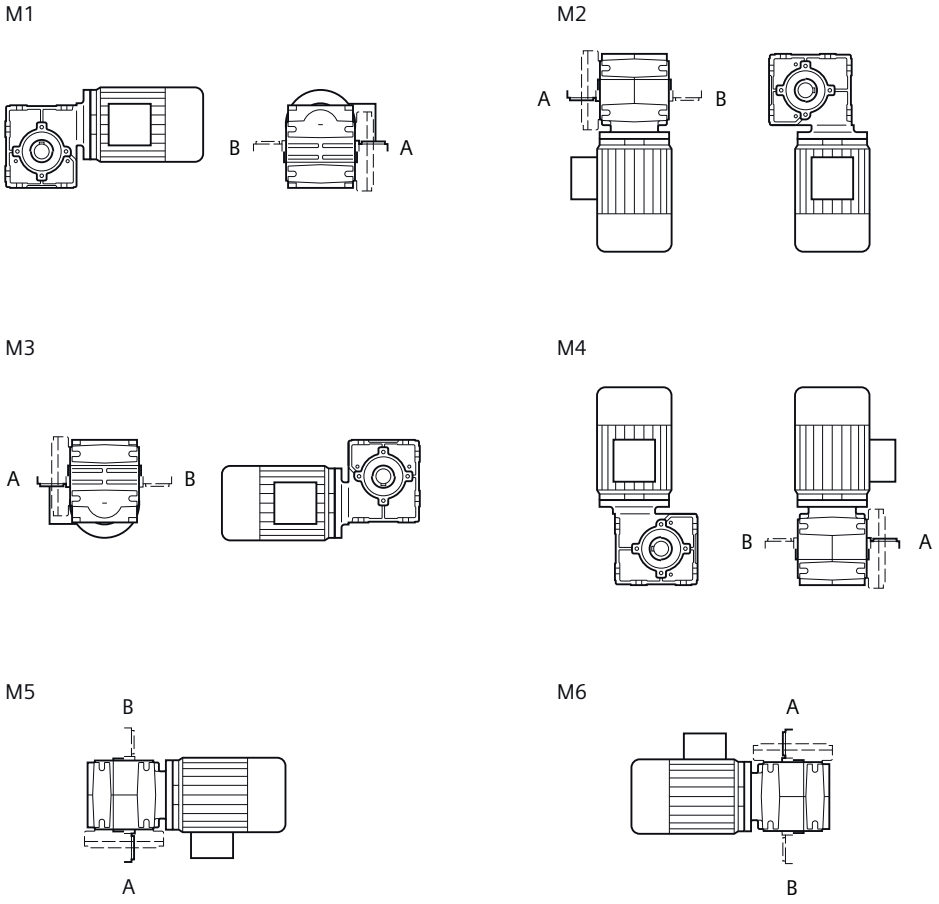



Figure 12-47 Mounting positions for worm gearbox S, frame size 09 - 29

## 12.5.8 Tandem gearbox/gearbox with slow input speed - intermediate helical gearbox or drive unit

Only operate the gearbox in the mounting position specified on the rating plate. This ensures that the correct quantity of lubricant is provided. The symbols are shown for the standard mounting position.

**Note**

**Horizontal operating position**

In a horizontal operating position the bulging part of the housing of the intermediate helical gearbox generally faces vertically downwards.

**Note**

**Helical gearbox size 19**

The helical gearbox size 19 is lubricated for life. There is no opening to check the oil level.

The gearboxes have a breather valve in vertical mounting positions.

**Note**

**Tandem gearbox/gearbox with slow input speed**

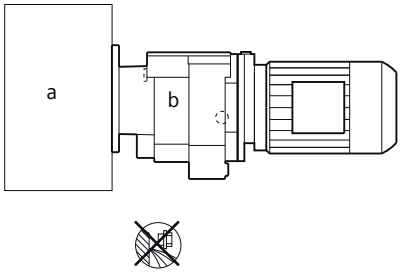
Tandem gearbox (a - main gearbox) is representative for a gearbox with slow input speed.

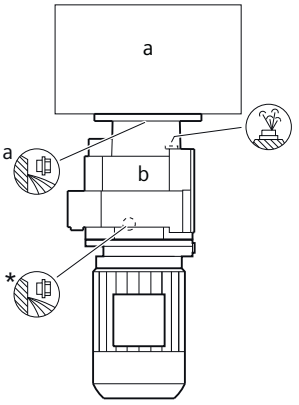
In some mounting positions, a higher oil level is required in order to adequately lubricate the bearings at the top.

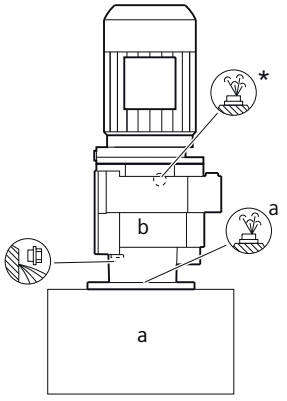
Horizontal operating position

Vertical operating position

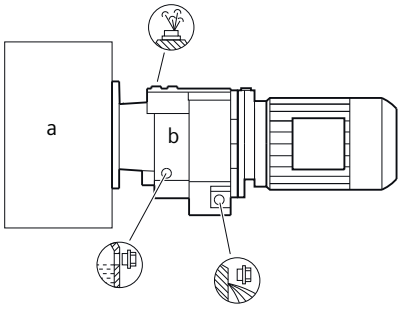
b: D/Z 19

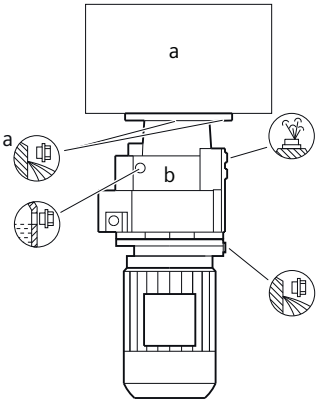


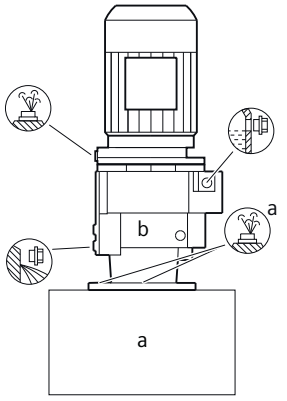



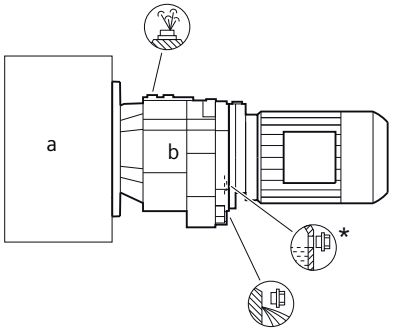

b: D/Z 39

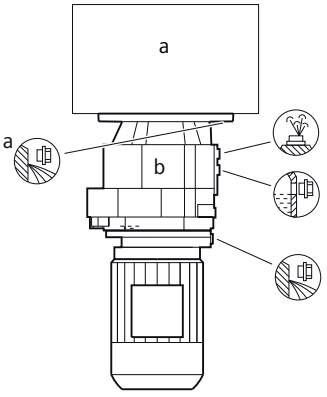


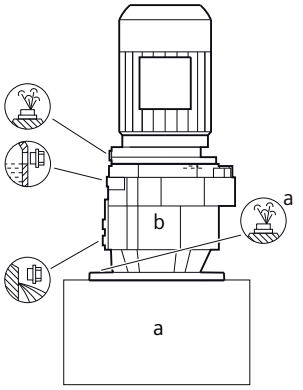




b: D/Z 49 - 69




Operating position for tandem gearbox

a Main gearbox
b Intermediate helical gearbox or drive unit
* On opposite side

## 12.6 Oil quantities

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Damage to the gearbox caused by incorrect oil quantities**<br>The oil quantities listed in the tables are guide values for changing the oil. They serve, for example, for lubricant storage and procurement.<br>The precise values depend on the number of stages and transmission ratio of the gearbox.<br>The specified oil quantities are valid for the standard mounting position. |

**Note**

**Tandem gearbox - intermediate helical gearbox**

The oil quantity is specified for every individual gearbox and is valid for the standard mounting position.

**Note**

**Gearbox in special mounting position**

The gearbox is intended for a specific rotation angle and is delivered with the correct quantity of oil for this purpose.

You will find information regarding oil quantity and type of oil on the rating plate.

### 12.6.1 Helical gearbox

Table 12-4 Oil quantities in l for E, EZ, EF , sizes 39 - 149

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| E.39 | 0.2 | 0.5 | 0.4 | 0.7 | 0.45 | 0.45 |
| E.49 | 0.4 | 1 | 0.95 | 1.5 | 1 | 0.95 |
| E.69 | 0.6 | 1.9 | 1.6 | 2.5 | 1.7 | 1.7 |
| E.89 | 0.9 | 3.7 | 2.5 | 4 | 3 | 2.9 |
| E.109 | 1.4 | 6.6 | 6 | 6.9 | 5.3 | 5.1 |
| E.129 | 2.2 | 10.7 | 6.6 | 9.5 | 7.7 | 7.5 |
| E.149 | 3.8 | 16 | 10.3 | 15.5 | 12 | 11.6 |

Table 12-5 Oil quantities in l for D/Z, DB/ZB, DF/ZF, DZ/ZZ, sizes 19 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| D.19 | 0.15 | 0.45 | 0.45 | 0.45 | 0.4 | 0.3 |
| D.29 | 0.15 | 0.65 | 0.45 | 0.5 | 0.55 | 0.4 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| D.39 | 0.25 | 0.9 | 0.8 | 0.85 | 0.8 | 0.7 |
| D.49 | 0.55 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.7 | 1.7 | 1.2 |
| D.59 | 0.45 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.2 |
| D.69 | 0.6 | 2 | 2.4 | 2.3 | 2.2 | 1.5 |
| D.79 | 1 | 3.5 | 3.7 | 3.6 | 3.4 | 2.3 |
| D.89 | 2 | 6.5 | 6.2 | 6 | 6 | 4.2 |
| D.109 | 2.9 | 11.3 | 11.3 | 10 | 9.8 | 7.3 |
| D.129 | 5.6 | 17.9 | 18.5 | 17.7 | 16.9 | 12.1 |
| D.149 | 9.1 | 30.5 | 28.5 | 28.5 | 26 | 20.5 |
| D.169 | 12.9 | 45 | 45 | 43.5 | 40.5 | 33 |
| D.189 | 17.9 | 65 | 77 | 77 | 59 | 59 |
| Z.19 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.45 | 0.5 | 0.4 | 0.35 |
| Z.29 | 0.2 | 0.7 | 0.45 | 0.6 | 0.55 | 0.3 |
| Z.39 | 0.3 | 0.95 | 0.85 | 0.95 | 0.9 | 0.25 |
| Z.49 | 0.55 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 1.8 | 0.65 |
| Z.59 | 0.65 | 2 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 0.6 |
| Z.69 | 0.65 | 2.1 | 2.6 | 2.6 | 2.3 | 0.85 |
| Z.79 | 1.1 | 3.8 | 3.9 | 3.9 | 3.7 | 1.4 |
| Z.89 | 2.2 | 6.9 | 6.7 | 6.7 | 6.6 | 2.4 |
| Z.109 | 3 | 12 | 12.3 | 11.3 | 10.7 | 4.6 |
| Z.129 | 6 | 19 | 19.9 | 19.9 | 18.4 | 7.5 |
| Z.149 | 9.4 | 32 | 31.5 | 32.5 | 29 | 12.2 |
| Z.169 | 13.6 | 47.5 | 49 | 49.5 | 45 | 17.9 |
| Z.189 | 18.9 | 67 | 79 | 80 | 61 | 36.5 |

## 12.6.2 Parallel shaft gearbox

Table 12-6 Oil quantities in l for FD/Z, FD/ZZ, FD/ZA., FD/ZAF., FD/ZAZ., FD/ZAD., sizes 29 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| FD.29 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 0.35 | 0.6 | 0.45 | 0.45 |
| FD.39 | 0.95 | 1.1 | 0.7 | 1.2 | 0.8 | 0.8 |
| FD.49 | 2.1 | 2.3 | 1.5 | 2.3 | 1.5 | 1.5 |
| FD.69 | 2.2 | 2.7 | 1.6 | 2.7 | 1.8 | 1.8 |
| FD.79 | 3 | 3.8 | 2.7 | 3.9 | 2.6 | 2.7 |
| FD.89 | 5.6 | 7.6 | 5.9 | 7.8 | 5.1 | 5.2 |
| FD.109 | 9.5 | 13 | 9.2 | 11.8 | 8.5 | 8.5 |
| FD.129 | 16.1 | 20 | 16.3 | 23.5 | 14.9 | 15 |
| FD.149 | 24.5 | 32.5 | 23 | 34 | 21.5 | 22 |
| FD.169 | 39 | 50 | 37 | 54 | 34.5 | 35.5 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| FD.189 | 64 | 74 | 48 | 77 | 51.5 | 52 |
| FZ.29 | 0.6 | 0.9 | 0.4 | 0.7 | 0.5 | 0.45 |
| FZ.39 | 0.95 | 1.3 | 0.8 | 1.4 | 0.9 | 0.85 |
| FZ.49 | 1.6 | 2.5 | 1.6 | 2.5 | 1.6 | 1.6 |
| FZ.69 | 2.2 | 2.8 | 1.6 | 2.9 | 1.9 | 1.9 |
| FZ.79 | 2.8 | 4.1 | 2.9 | 4.2 | 2.7 | 2.9 |
| FZ.89 | 4.9 | 7.7 | 5.9 | 8.4 | 5.2 | 5.5 |
| FZ.109 | 9.1 | 13.7 | 9.4 | 13.1 | 9 | 9.3 |
| FZ.129 | 15.6 | 21.5 | 16.7 | 25 | 15.6 | 16.3 |
| FZ.149 | 23.5 | 34 | 24 | 37 | 22.5 | 24 |
| FZ.169 | 38 | 54 | 37.5 | 59 | 36.5 | 38.5 |
| FZ.189 | 57 | 77 | 50 | 80 | 52.5 | 54 |

Table 12-7 Oil quantities in l for FD/ZF, sizes 29 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| FDF29 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 0.35 | 0.6 | 0.45 | 0.45 |
| FDF39 | 1 | 1.2 | 0.75 | 1.3 | 0.8 | 0.85 |
| FDF49 | 2.2 | 2.3 | 1.5 | 2.4 | 1.6 | 1.5 |
| FDF69 | 2.4 | 2.8 | 1.6 | 2.9 | 1.9 | 1.9 |
| FDF79 | 3.1 | 3.9 | 2.7 | 4 | 2.7 | 2.6 |
| FDF89 | 5.8 | 7.6 | 5.8 | 8 | 5.2 | 5.2 |
| FDF109 | 9.7 | 13 | 9.2 | 12 | 8.6 | 8.6 |
| FDF129 | 16.4 | 20 | 16.3 | 23.5 | 15.1 | 15.2 |
| FDF149 | 25 | 32.5 | 23 | 35 | 22 | 22.5 |
| FDF169 | 40.5 | 50 | 37 | 56 | 35.5 | 36.5 |
| FDF189 | 66 | 74 | 48 | 79 | 53 | 53 |
| FZF29 | 0.6 | 0.9 | 0.4 | 0.7 | 0.5 | 0.45 |
| FZF39 | 1 | 1.4 | 0.85 | 1.6 | 0.95 | 0.9 |
| FZF49 | 1.8 | 2.4 | 1.5 | 2.6 | 1.6 | 1.6 |
| FZF69 | 2.4 | 2.9 | 1.6 | 3.1 | 2 | 2 |
| FZF79 | 2.9 | 4.2 | 2.9 | 4.3 | 2.9 | 2.8 |
| FZF89 | 5.1 | 7.7 | 5.8 | 8.6 | 5.3 | 5.4 |
| FZF109 | 9.2 | 13.7 | 9.4 | 13.3 | 9.1 | 9.4 |
| FZF129 | 16 | 21.5 | 16.7 | 25.5 | 15.8 | 16.5 |
| FZF149 | 24 | 34 | 24 | 38 | 23 | 24.5 |
| FZF169 | 39.5 | 54 | 37.5 | 61 | 37.5 | 39.5 |
| FZF189 | 60 | 77 | 50 | 82 | 53.5 | 55 |

## 12.6.3 Bevel gearbox

Table 12-8 Oil quantities in l for B, sizes 19 - 49

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| B.19 | 0.15 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.45 | 0.3 | 0.3 |
| B.29 | 0.25 | 0.55 | 0.7 | 0.85 | 0.55 | 0.5 |
| B.39 | 0.5 | 0.95 | 1.3 | 1.6 | 0.95 | 0.9 |
| B.49 | 1 | 1.7 | 2.4 | 3.1 | 1.8 | 1.5 |

Table 12-9 Oil quantities in l for K, KA, KAS, KAT, sizes 39 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5-A<br>M6-B** | **M6-A<br>M5-B** |
| K.39 | 0.35 | 0.85 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 0.85 | 0.9 |
| K.49 | 0.55 | 1.4 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 1.5 | 1.6 |
| K.69 | 0.75 | 2 | 2.5 | 2.7 | 2.2 | 2.2 |
| K.79 | 1 | 2.2 | 2.9 | 3.4 | 2.7 | 2.5 |
| K.89 | 1.9 | 4.5 | 6 | 6.8 | 5 | 5.3 |
| K.109 | 3 | 7.2 | 9.2 | 10.5 | 7.1 | 7.5 |
| K.129 | 6.2 | 13.4 | 16.6 | 19.5 | 13.2 | 13.6 |
| K.149 | 9.3 | 21 | 28 | 33 | 21.5 | 22.5 |
| K.169 | 17 | 31 | 47 | 57.5 | 35.5 | 38.5 |
| K.189 | 24.5 | 53 | 73 | 87 | 53.5 | 59 |

Table 12-10 Oil quantities in l for KZ, KAF., KAZ., KAD., sizes 39 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5-A<br>M6-B** | **M6-A<br>M5-B** |
| K.39 | 0.4 | 0.9 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 0.95 | 0.95 |
| K.49 | 0.65 | 1.5 | 1.9 | 2.2 | 1.6 | 1.6 |
| K.69 | 0.85 | 2.1 | 2.8 | 3.2 | 2.4 | 2.5 |
| K.79 | 1.1 | 2.4 | 3.1 | 3.7 | 2.5 | 2.7 |
| K.89 | 2.2 | 4.7 | 6.2 | 7.3 | 5.3 | 5.6 |
| K.109 | 3.7 | 7.4 | 9 | 11.7 | 7.6 | 8.2 |
| K.129 | 6.5 | 13.5 | 17.5 | 20.5 | 13.8 | 14.2 |
| K.149 | 9.6 | 21.5 | 29 | 34.5 | 22.5 | 23.5 |
| K.169 | 17 | 31 | 47 | 57.5 | 35.5 | 38.5 |
| K.189 | 24.5 | 53 | 73 | 87 | 53.5 | 59 |

Table 12-11 Oil quantities in l for KF, sizes 39 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5-A<br>M6-B | M6-A<br>M5-B |
| KF39 | 0.35 | 0.9 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 0.95 | 1 |
| KF49 | 0.6 | 1.4 | 2 | 2.2 | 1.6 | 1.7 |
| KF69 | 0.85 | 2 | 2.8 | 3.1 | 2.4 | 2.4 |
| KF79 | 1.2 | 2.3 | 3.1 | 3.8 | 3 | 2.5 |
| KF89 | 2.1 | 4.6 | 6.5 | 7.6 | 5.6 | 5.5 |
| KF109 | 3.6 | 7.4 | 9.8 | 11.7 | 8.1 | 7.8 |
| KF129 | 6.7 | 13.9 | 18.1 | 21.5 | 14.4 | 14.8 |
| KF149 | 9.7 | 22 | 30.5 | 36 | 23 | 24 |
| KF169 | 16.9 | 30.5 | 48.5 | 59.5 | 36.5 | 39 |
| KF189 | 24.5 | 54 | 76 | 90 | 56 | 60 |

## 12.6.4 Helical worm gearbox

Table 12-12 Oil quantities in l for C, CA., CAS, CAT, sizes 29 - 89

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| C.29 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.55 | 0.35 | 0.4 |
| C.39A | 0.2 | 0.91 | 0.79 | 0.78 | 0.46 | 0.48 |
| C.39 | 0.3 | 1.1 | 0.95 | 1 | 0.55 | 0.6 |
| C.49 | 0.55 | 1.8 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1 | 1.1 |
| C.69 | 0.75 | 2.6 | 2.6 | 2.9 | 1.6 | 1.7 |
| C.89 | 1.2 | 4.2 | 4.8 | 5 | 2.8 | 2.9 |

Table 12-13 Oil quantities in l for CZ, CAF., CAZ., CAD., sizes 29 - 89

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| C.29 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.55 | 0.5 | 0.35 | 0.35 |
| C.39A | 0.2 | 0.91 | 0.79 | 0.78 | 0.46 | 0.48 |
| C.39 | 0.3 | 1.1 | 0.95 | 1 | 0.6 | 0.6 |
| C.49 | 0.6 | 1.9 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 1.1 | 1.1 |
| C.69 | 0.8 | 2.6 | 2.6 | 3 | 1.6 | 1.6 |
| C.89 | 1.4 | 4.4 | 5 | 5.4 | 3 | 3 |

Table 12-14 Oil quantities in l for CF, sizes 29 - 89

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| CF29 | 0.15 | 0.5 | 0.55 | 0.5 | 0.35 | 0.35 |
| CF39A | 0.2 | 0.96 | 0.84 | 0.78 | 0.51 | 0.48 |
| CF39 | 0.3 | 1.2 | 1 | 1.1 | 0.65 | 0.65 |
| CF49 | 0.6 | 2 | 1.9 | 2 | 1.2 | 1.2 |
| CF69 | 0.8 | 2.6 | 2.6 | 3 | 1.6 | 1.6 |
| CF89 | 1.4 | 4.4 | 5 | 5.4 | 3 | 3 |

## 12.6.5 Tandem gearbox/gearbox with slow input speed - intermediate helical gearbox or drive unit

### 12.6.5.1 Two- and three-stage helical gearboxes

**Note**

For gearbox "a" in mounting position M4, the oil level is above the oil level hole so that the higher bearings are lubricated.

Table 12-15 Oil quantity in l for D/Z, DB/ZB, DF/ZF, DZ/ZZ, sizes 29 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| Z.29-Z19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.7 + 0.5 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.5 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 0.3 + 0.15 |
| Z.29-D19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.7 + 0.45 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.45 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 0.3 + 0.15 |
| D.29-D19 | 0.15 + 0.15 | 0.65 + 0.45 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 0.65 + 0.45 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 0.4 + 0.15 |
| Z.39-Z19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.5 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.5 | 0.9 + 0.15 | 0.25 + 0.15 |
| Z.39-D19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.45 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.45 | 0.9 + 0.15 | 0.25 + 0.15 |
| D.39-D19 | 0.25 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.45 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.45 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 0.7 + 0.15 |
| Z.49-Z19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.5 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 0.65 + 0.15 |
| Z.49-D19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.45 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 0.65 + 0.15 |
| D.49-Z19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.5 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.5 | 1.7 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.15 |
| D.49-D19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.45 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.45 | 1.7 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.15 |
| Z.59-Z19 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| Z.59-D19 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| D.59-Z19 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.5 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.15 |
| D.59-D19 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.45 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.15 |
| Z.69-Z19 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.5 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 2.9 + 0.5 | 2.3 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.15 |
| Z.69-D19 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.45 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 2.9 + 0.45 | 2.3 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.15 |
| D.69-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.5 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.7 + 0.5 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.15 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| D.69-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.45 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.7 + 0.45 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.15 |
| Z.79-Z39 | 1.1 + 0.3 | 3.8 + 0.95 | 3.9 + 0.3 | 4.5 + 1 | 3.7 + 0.3 | 1.4 + 0.3 |
| Z.79-D39 | 1.1 + 0.25 | 3.8 + 0.9 | 3.9 + 0.25 | 4.5 + 0.9 | 3.7 + 0.25 | 1.4 + 0.25 |
| D.79-D39 | 1 + 0.25 | 3.5 + 0.9 | 3.7 + 0.25 | 4.2 + 0.9 | 3.4 + 0.25 | 2.3 + 0.25 |
| Z.89-Z39 | 2.2 + 0.3 | 6.9 + 0.95 | 6.7 + 0.3 | 7.7 + 1 | 6.6 + 0.3 | 2.4 + 0.3 |
| Z.89-D39 | 2.2 + 0.25 | 6.9 + 0.9 | 6.7 + 0.25 | 7.7 + 0.9 | 6.6 + 0.25 | 2.4 + 0.25 |
| D.89-Z39 | 2 + 0.3 | 6.5 + 0.95 | 6.2 + 0.3 | 7.2 + 1 | 6 + 0.3 | 4.2 + 0.3 |
| D.89-D39 | 2 + 0.25 | 6.5 + 0.9 | 6.2 + 0.25 | 7.2 + 0.9 | 6 + 0.25 | 4.2 + 0.25 |
| D.109-Z39 | 2.9 + 0.3 | 11.3 + 0.95 | 11.3 + 0.3 | 12.1 + 1 | 9.8 + 0.3 | 7.3 + 0.3 |
| D.109-D39 | 2.9 + 0.25 | 11.3 + 0.9 | 11.3 + 0.25 | 12.1 + 0.9 | 9.8 + 0.25 | 7.3 + 0.25 |
| D.129-Z49 | 5.6 + 0.55 | 17.9 + 1.9 | 18.5 + 0.55 | 22.5 + 2.1 | 16.9 + 0.55 | 12.1 + 0.55 |
| D.129-D49 | 5.6 + 0.55 | 17.9 + 1.8 | 18.5 + 0.55 | 22.5 + 1.9 | 16.9 + 0.55 | 12.1 + 0.55 |
| D.149-Z49 | 9.1 + 0.55 | 30.5 + 1.9 | 28.5 + 0.55 | 34 + 2.1 | 26 + 0.55 | 20.5 + 0.55 |
| D.149-D49 | 9.1 + 0.55 | 30.5 + 1.8 | 28.5 + 0.55 | 34 + 1.9 | 26 + 0.55 | 20.5 + 0.55 |
| D.169-Z69 | 12.9 + 0.65 | 45 + 2.1 | 45 + 0.65 | 54 + 2.95 | 40.5 + 0.65 | 33 + 0.65 |
| D.169-D69 | 12.9 + 0.6 | 45 + 2 | 45 + 0.6 | 54 + 2.65 | 40.5 + 0.6 | 33 + 0.6 |
| D.189-Z69 | 17.9 + 0.65 | 65 + 2.1 | 77 + 0.65 | 87 + 2.95 | 59 + 0.65 | 59 + 0.65 |
| D.189-D69 | 17.9 + 0.6 | 65 + 2 | 77 + 0.6 | 87 + 2.65 | 59 + 0.6 | 59 + 0.6 |

### 12.6.5.2 Parallel shaft gearboxes

**Note**

For gearbox "a" in mounting position M4, the oil level is above the oil level hole so that the higher bearings are lubricated.

Table 12-16 Oil quantities in l for FD/Z, FD/ZZ, FD/ZA., FD/ZAF., FD/ZAZ., FD/ZAD., sizes 29 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| FZ.29-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.5 | 0.4 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.5 | 0.5 + 0.15 | 0.45 + 0.15 |
| FZ.29-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.45 | 0.4 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.45 | 0.5 + 0.15 | 0.45 + 0.15 |
| FD.29-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.8 + 0.45 | 0.35 + 0.15 | 0.75 + 0.45 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| FZ.39-Z19 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1.3 + 0.5 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.5 | 0.9 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.15 |
| FZ.39-D19 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1.3 + 0.45 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.45 | 0.9 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.15 |
| FD.39-D19 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.45 | 0.7 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.45 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.15 |
| FZ.49-Z19 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 2.5 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| FZ.49-D19 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 2.5 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| FD.49-Z19 | 2.1 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.5 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 2.8 + 0.5 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.15 |
| FD.49-D19 | 2.1 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.45 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 2.8 + 0.45 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.15 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| FZ.69-Z19 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.8 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.15 |
| FZ.69-D19 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.8 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.15 |
| FD.69-Z19 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.7 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.2 + 0.5 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.2 + 0.15 |
| FD.69-D19 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.7 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.2 + 0.45 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.2 + 0.15 |
| FZ.79-Z39 | 2.8 + 0.3 | 4.1 + 0.95 | 2.9 + 0.3 | 4.9 + 1 | 2.7 + 0.3 | 2.9 + 0.3 |
| FZ.79-D39 | 2.8 + 0.25 | 4.1 + 0.9 | 2.9 + 0.25 | 4.9 + 0.9 | 2.7 + 0.25 | 2.9 + 0.25 |
| FD.79-D39 | 3 + 0.25 | 3.8 + 0.9 | 2.7 + 0.25 | 4.6 + 0.9 | 2.6 + 0.25 | 3.1 + 0.25 |
| FZ.89-Z39 | 4.9 + 0.3 | 7.7 + 0.95 | 5.9 + 0.3 | 9.6 + 1 | 5.2 + 0.3 | 5.5 + 0.3 |
| FZ.89-D39 | 4.9 + 0.25 | 7.7 + 0.9 | 5.9 + 0.25 | 9.6 + 0.9 | 5.2 + 0.25 | 5.5 + 0.25 |
| FD.89-Z39 | 5.6 + 0.3 | 7.6 + 0.95 | 5.9 + 0.3 | 9 + 1 | 5.1 + 0.3 | 5.9 + 0.3 |
| FD.89-D39 | 5.6 + 0.25 | 7.6 + 0.9 | 5.9 + 0.25 | 9 + 0.9 | 5.1 + 0.25 | 5.9 + 0.25 |
| FD.109-Z39 | 9.5 + 0.3 | 13 + 0.95 | 9.2 + 0.3 | 14.8 + 1 | 8.5 + 0.3 | 10.4 + 0.3 |
| FD.109-D39 | 9.5 + 0.25 | 13 + 0.9 | 9.2 + 0.25 | 14.8 + 0.9 | 8.5 + 0.25 | 10.4 + 0.25 |
| FD.129-Z49 | 16.1 + 0.55 | 20 + 1.9 | 16.3 + 0.55 | 28 + 2.1 | 14.9 + 0.55 | 17.9 + 0.55 |
| FD.129-D49 | 16.1 + 0.55 | 20 + 1.8 | 16.3 + 0.55 | 28 + 1.9 | 14.9 + 0.55 | 17.9 + 0.55 |
| FD.149-Z49 | 24.5 + 0.55 | 32.5 + 1.9 | 23 + 0.55 | 41 + 2.1 | 21.5 + 0.55 | 26.5 + 0.55 |
| FD.149-D49 | 24.5 + 0.55 | 32.5 + 1.8 | 23 + 0.55 | 41 + 1.9 | 21.5 + 0.55 | 26.5 + 0.55 |
| FD.169-Z69 | 39 + 0.65 | 50 + 2.1 | 37 + 0.65 | 66 + 2.95 | 34.5 + 0.65 | 42.3 + 0.65 |
| FD.169-D69 | 39 + 0.6 | 50 + 2 | 37 + 0.6 | 66 + 2.65 | 34.5 + 0.6 | 42.3 + 0.6 |
| FD.189-Z69 | 64 + 0.65 | 74 + 2.1 | 48 + 0.65 | 93 + 2.95 | 51.5 + 0.65 | 60.7 + 0.65 |
| FD.189-D69 | 64 + 0.6 | 74 + 2 | 48 + 0.6 | 93 + 2.65 | 51.5 + 0.6 | 60.7 + 0.6 |

Table 12-17 Oil quantities in l for FD/ZF, sizes 29 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| FZF29-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.5 | 0.4 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.5 | 0.5 + 0.15 | 0.45 + 0.15 |
| FZF29-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.45 | 0.4 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.45 | 0.5 + 0.15 | 0.45 + 0.15 |
| FDF29-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.8 + 0.45 | 0.35 + 0.15 | 0.75 + 0.45 | 0.45 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| FZF39-Z19 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.5 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.5 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.15 |
| FZF39-D19 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.45 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.45 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.15 |
| FDF39-D19 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.45 | 0.75 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.45 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 1.05 + 0.15 |
| FZF49-Z19 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.5 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 3.2 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| FZF49-D19 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.45 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 3.2 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| FDF49-Z19 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.5 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.15 |
| FDF49-D19 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.45 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.15 |
| FZF69-Z19 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.9 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.6 + 0.5 | 2 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.15 |
| FZF69-D19 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.9 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.6 + 0.45 | 2 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.15 |
| FDF69-Z19 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.8 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.15 |
| FDF69-D19 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.8 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.3 + 0.15 |
| FZF79-Z39 | 2.9 + 0.3 | 4.2 + 0.95 | 2.9 + 0.3 | 5 + 1 | 2.9 + 0.3 | 2.8 + 0.3 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| FZF79-D39 | 2.9 + 0.25 | 4.2 + 0.9 | 2.9 + 0.25 | 5 + 0.9 | 2.9 + 0.25 | 2.8 + 0.25 |
| FDF79-D39 | 3.1 + 0.25 | 3.9 + 0.9 | 2.7 + 0.25 | 4.7 + 0.9 | 2.7 + 0.25 | 3.0 + 0.25 |
| FZF89-Z39 | 5.1 + 0.3 | 7.7 + 0.95 | 5.8 + 0.3 | 9.8 + 1 | 5.3 + 0.3 | 5.4 + 0.3 |
| FZF89-D39 | 5.1 + 0.25 | 7.7 + 0.9 | 5.8 + 0.25 | 9.8 + 0.9 | 5.3 + 0.25 | 5.4 + 0.25 |
| FDF89-Z39 | 5.8 + 0.3 | 7.6 + 0.95 | 5.8 + 0.3 | 9.2 + 1 | 5.2 + 0.3 | 5.9 + 0.3 |
| FDF89-D39 | 5.8 + 0.25 | 7.6 + 0.9 | 5.8 + 0.25 | 9.2 + 0.9 | 5.2 + 0.25 | 5.9 + 0.25 |
| FDF109-Z39 | 9.7 + 0.3 | 13 + 0.95 | 9.2 + 0.3 | 15 + 1 | 8.6 + 0.3 | 10.5 + 0.3 |
| FDF109-D39 | 9.7 + 0.25 | 13 + 0.9 | 9.2 + 0.25 | 15 + 0.9 | 8.6 + 0.25 | 10.5 + 0.25 |
| FDF129-Z49 | 16.4 + 0.55 | 20 + 1.9 | 16.3 + 0.55 | 28.5 + 2.1 | 15.1 + 0.55 | 18.5 + 0.55 |
| FDF129-D49 | 16.4 + 0.55 | 20 + 1.8 | 16.3 + 0.55 | 28.5 + 1.9 | 15.1 + 0.55 | 18.5 + 0.55 |
| FDF149-Z49 | 25 + 0.55 | 32.5 + 1.9 | 23 + 0.55 | 41.5 + 2.1 | 22 + 0.55 | 27 + 0.55 |
| FDF149-D49 | 25 + 0.55 | 32.5 + 1.8 | 23 + 0.55 | 41.5 + 1.9 | 22 + 0.55 | 27 + 0.55 |
| FDF169-Z69 | 40.5 + 0.65 | 50 + 2.1 | 37 + 0.65 | 68 + 2.95 | 35.5 + 0.65 | 43.3 + 0.65 |
| FDF169-D69 | 40.5 + 0.6 | 50 + 2 | 37 + 0.6 | 68 + 2.65 | 35.5 + 0.6 | 43.3 + 0.6 |
| FDF189-Z69 | 66 + 0.65 | 74 + 2.1 | 48 + 0.65 | 95 + 2.95 | 53 + 0.65 | 61.7 + 0.65 |
| FDF189-D69 | 66 + 0.6 | 74 + 2 | 48 + 0.6 | 95 + 2.65 | 53 + 0.6 | 61.7 + 0.6 |

### 12.6.5.3 Bevel gearbox

**Note**

For gearbox "a" in mounting position M4, the oil level is above the oil level hole so that the higher bearings are lubricated.

Table 12-18 Oil quantities in l for K, KA, KAS, KAT, sizes 39 - 189

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | M1 | M2 | M3 | M4 | M5 | M6 |
| K.39-Z19 | 0.35 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.5 | 1.1 + 0.15 | 1.3 + 0.5 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.15 |
| K.49-Z19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.5 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.2 + 0.5 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| K.69-Z19 | 0.75 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.5 | 2.5 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.5 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.2 + 0.15 |
| K.79-Z39 | 1 + 0.3 | 2.2 + 0.95 | 2.9 + 0.3 | 3.7 + 1 | 2.7 + 0.3 | 2.5 + 0.3 |
| K.89-Z39 | 1.9 + 0.3 | 4.5 + 0.95 | 6 + 0.3 | 7.3 + 1 | 5 + 0.3 | 5.3 + 0.3 |
| K.109-Z39 | 3 + 0.3 | 7.2 + 0.95 | 9.2 + 0.3 | 11.6 + 1 | 7.1 + 0.3 | 7.5 + 0.3 |
| K.129-Z39 | 6.2 + 0.3 | 13.4 + 0.95 | 16.6 + 0.3 | 21.5 + 1 | 13.2 + 0.3 | 13.6 + 0.3 |
| K.149-Z49 | 9.3 + 0.55 | 21 + 1.9 | 28 + 0.55 | 36 + 2.1 | 21.5 + 0.55 | 22.5 + 0.55 |
| K.169-Z49 | 17 + 0.55 | 31 + 1.9 | 47 + 0.55 | 63 + 2.1 | 35.5 + 0.55 | 38.5 + 0.55 |
| K.189-Z69 | 24.5 + 0.65 | 53 + 2.1 | 73 + 0.65 | 94 + 2.95 | 53.5 + 0.65 | 59 + 0.65 |
| K.39-D19 | 0.35 + 0.15 | 0.85 + 0.45 | 1.1 + 0.15 | 1.3 + 0.45 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.15 |
| K.49-D19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.45 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 2.2 + 0.45 | 1.5 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| K.69-D19 | 0.75 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.45 | 2.5 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.45 | 2.2 + 0.15 | 2.2 + 0.15 |
| K.79-D39 | 1 + 0.25 | 2.2 + 0.9 | 2.9 + 0.25 | 3.7 + 0.9 | 2.7 + 0.25 | 2.5 + 0.25 |
| K.89-D39 | 1.9 + 0.25 | 4.5 + 0.9 | 6 + 0.25 | 7.3 + 0.9 | 5 + 0.25 | 5.3 + 0.25 |
| K.109-D39 | 3 + 0.25 | 7.2 + 0.9 | 9.2 + 0.25 | 11.6 + 0.9 | 7.1 + 0.25 | 7.5 + 0.25 |
| K.129-D39 | 6.2 + 0.25 | 13.4 + 0.9 | 16.6 + 0.25 | 21.5 + 0.9 | 13.2 + 0.25 | 13.6 + 0.25 |
| K.149-D49 | 9.3 + 0.55 | 21 + 1.8 | 28 + 0.55 | 36 + 1.9 | 21.5 + 0.55 | 22.5 + 0.55 |
| K.169-D49 | 17 + 0.55 | 31 + 1.8 | 47 + 0.55 | 63 + 1.9 | 35.5 + 0.55 | 38.5 + 0.55 |
| K.189-D69 | 24.5 + 0.6 | 53 + 2 | 73 + 0.6 | 94 + 2.65 | 53.5 + 0.6 | 59 + 0.6 |

Table 12-19 Oil quantities in l for KZ, KAF., KAZ., KAD., sizes 39 - 189

| Type | Type of construction | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| K.39-Z19 | 0.4 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.5 | 1.2 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.5 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.15 |
| K.49-Z19 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| K.69-Z19 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.5 | 2.8 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.5 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.5 + 0.15 |
| K.79-Z39 | 1.1 + 0.3 | 2.4 + 0.95 | 3.1 + 0.3 | 4 + 1 | 2.5 + 0.3 | 2.7 + 0.3 |
| K.89-Z39 | 2.2 + 0.3 | 4.7 + 0.95 | 6.2 + 0.3 | 7.8 + 1 | 5.3 + 0.3 | 5.6 + 0.3 |
| K.109-Z39 | 3.7 + 0.3 | 7.4 + 0.95 | 9 + 0.3 | 12.8 + 1 | 7.6 + 0.3 | 8.2 + 0.3 |
| K.129-Z39 | 6.5 + 0.3 | 13.5 + 0.95 | 17.5 + 0.3 | 23 + 1 | 13.8 + 0.3 | 14.2 + 0.3 |
| K.149-Z49 | 9.6 + 0.55 | 21.5 + 1.9 | 29 + 0.55 | 37.5 + 2.1 | 22.5 + 0.55 | 23.5 + 0.55 |
| K.169-Z49 | 17 + 0.55 | 31 + 1.9 | 47 + 0.55 | 63 + 2.1 | 35.5 + 0.55 | 38.5 + 0.55 |
| K.189-Z69 | 24.5 + 0.65 | 53 + 2.1 | 73 + 0.65 | 94 + 2.95 | 53.5 + 0.65 | 59 + 0.65 |
| K.39-D19 | 0.4 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.45 | 1.2 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.45 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 0.95 + 0.15 |
| K.49-D19 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| K.69-D19 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 2.1 + 0.45 | 2.8 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.45 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.5 + 0.15 |
| K.79-D39 | 1.1 + 0.25 | 2.4 + 0.9 | 3.1 + 0.25 | 4 + 0.9 | 2.5 + 0.25 | 2.7 + 0.25 |
| K.89-D39 | 2.2 + 0.25 | 4.7 + 0.9 | 6.2 + 0.25 | 7.8 + 0.9 | 5.3 + 0.25 | 5.6 + 0.25 |
| K.109-D39 | 3.7 + 0.25 | 7.4 + 0.9 | 9 + 0.25 | 12.8 + 0.9 | 7.6 + 0.25 | 8.2 + 0.25 |
| K.129-D39 | 6.5 + 0.25 | 13.5 + 0.9 | 17.5 + 0.25 | 23 + 0.9 | 13.8 + 0.25 | 14.2 + 0.25 |
| K.149-D49 | 9.6 + 0.55 | 21.5 + 1.8 | 29 + 0.55 | 37.5 + 1.9 | 22.5 + 0.55 | 23.5 + 0.55 |
| K.169-D49 | 17 + 0.55 | 31 + 1.8 | 47 + 0.55 | 63 + 1.9 | 35.5 + 0.55 | 38.5 + 0.55 |
| K.189-D69 | 24.5 + 0.6 | 53 + 2 | 73 + 0.6 | 94 + 2.65 | 53.5 + 0.6 | 59 + 0.6 |

Table 12-20 Oil quantities in l for KF, sizes 39 - 189

| Type | Type of construction | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| KF39-Z19 | 0.35 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.5 | 1.2 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.5 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.15 |
| KF49-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.5 | 2 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.7 + 0.15 |
| KF69-Z19 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.5 | 2.8 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.5 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.15 |

| Type | Type of construction | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| KF79-Z39 | 1.2 + 0.3 | 2.3 + 0.95 | 3.1 + 0.3 | 4.1 + 1 | 3 + 0.3 | 2.5 + 0.3 |
| KF89-Z39 | 2.1 + 0.3 | 4.6 + 0.95 | 6.5 + 0.3 | 8 + 1 | 5.6 + 0.3 | 5.5 + 0.3 |
| KF109-Z39 | 3.6 + 0.3 | 7.4 + 0.95 | 9.8 + 0.3 | 12.8 + 1 | 8.1 + 0.3 | 7.8 + 0.3 |
| KF129-Z39 | 6.7 + 0.3 | 13.9 + 0.95 | 18.1 + 0.3 | 24 + 1 | 14.4 + 0.3 | 14.8 + 0.3 |
| KF149-Z49 | 9.7 + 0.55 | 22 + 1.9 | 30.5 + 0.55 | 39 + 2.1 | 23 + 0.55 | 24 + 0.55 |
| KF169-Z49 | 16.9 + 0.55 | 30.5 + 1.9 | 48.5 + 0.55 | 64 + 2.1 | 36.5 + 0.55 | 39 + 0.55 |
| KF189-Z69 | 24.5 + 0.65 | 54 + 2.1 | 76 + 0.65 | 98 + 2.95 | 56 + 0.65 | 60 + 0.65 |
| KF39-Z19 | 0.35 + 0.15 | 0.9 + 0.45 | 1.2 + 0.15 | 1.5 + 0.45 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.15 |
| KF49-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 1.4 + 0.45 | 2 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.7 + 0.15 |
| KF69-Z19 | 0.85 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.45 | 2.8 + 0.15 | 3.4 + 0.45 | 2.4 + 0.15 | 2.4 + 0.15 |
| KF79-Z39 | 1.2 + 0.25 | 2.3 + 0.9 | 3.1 + 0.25 | 4.1 + 0.9 | 3 + 0.25 | 2.5 + 0.25 |
| KF89-Z39 | 2.1 + 0.25 | 4.6 + 0.9 | 6.5 + 0.25 | 8 + 0.9 | 5.6 + 0.25 | 5.5 + 0.25 |
| KF109-Z39 | 3.6 + 0.25 | 7.4 + 0.9 | 9.8 + 0.25 | 12.8 + 0.9 | 8.1 + 0.25 | 7.8 + 0.25 |
| KF129-Z39 | 6.7 + 0.25 | 13.9 + 0.9 | 18.1 + 0.25 | 24 + 0.9 | 14.4 + 0.25 | 14.8 + 0.25 |
| KF149-Z49 | 9.7 + 0.55 | 22 + 1.8 | 30.5 + 0.55 | 39 + 1.9 | 23 + 0.55 | 24 + 0.55 |
| KF169-Z49 | 16.9 + 0.55 | 30.5 + 1.8 | 48.5 + 0.55 | 64 + 1.9 | 36.5 + 0.55 | 39 + 0.55 |
| KF189-D69 | 24.5 + 0.6 | 54 + 2 | 76 + 0.6 | 98 + 2.65 | 56 + 0.6 | 60 + 0.6 |

### 12.6.5.4 Helical worm gearboxes

Table 12-21 Oil quantities in l for C, CA., CAS, CAT, sizes 39 - 89

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| C.39A-Z19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.91 + 0.5 | 0.79 + 0.15 | 0.78 + 0.5 | 0.46 + 0.15 | 0.48 + 0.15 |
| C.39-Z19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.5 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.5 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| C.49-Z19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.5 | 1.7 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.5 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.15 |
| C.69-Z19 | 0.75 + 0.15 | 2.6 + 0.5 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 2.9 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.7 + 0.15 |
| C.89-Z39 | 1.2 + 0.3 | 4.2 + 0.95 | 4.8 + 0.3 | 5 + 1 | 2.8 + 0.3 | 2.9 + 0.3 |
| C.39A-D19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.91 + 0.5 | 0.79 + 0.15 | 0.78 + 0.5 | 0.46 + 0.15 | 0.48 + 0.15 |
| C.39-D19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.45 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.45 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| C.49-D19 | 0.55 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.45 | 1.7 + 0.15 | 1.8 + 0.45 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.15 |
| C.69-D19 | 0.75 + 0.15 | 2.6 + 0.45 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 2.9 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.7 + 0.15 |
| C.89-D39 | 1.2 + 0.25 | 4.2 + 0.9 | 4.8 + 0.25 | 5 + 0.9 | 2.8 + 0.25 | 2.9 + 0.25 |

Table 12-22 Oil quantities in l for CZ, CAF., CAZ., CAD., sizes 39 - 89

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| C.39A-Z19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.91 + 0.5 | 0.79 + 0.15 | 0.78 + 0.5 | 0.46 + 0.15 | 0.48 + 0.15 |
| C.39-Z19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.5 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.5 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| C.49-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.5 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.5 | 1.1 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.15 |
| C.69-Z19 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 2.6 + 0.5 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| C.89-Z39 | 1.4 + 0.3 | 4.4 + 0.95 | 5 + 0.3 | 5.4 + 1 | 3 + 0.3 | 3 + 0.3 |
| C.39A-D19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.91 + 0.5 | 0.79 + 0.15 | 0.78 + 0.5 | 0.46 + 0.15 | 0.48 + 0.15 |
| C.39-D19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.45 | 0.95 + 0.15 | 1 + 0.45 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 0.6 + 0.15 |
| C.49-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.45 | 1.8 + 0.15 | 1.9 + 0.45 | 1.1 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.15 |
| C.69-D19 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 2.6 + 0.45 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| C.89-D39 | 1.4 + 0.25 | 4.4 + 0.9 | 5 + 0.25 | 5.4 + 0.9 | 3 + 0.25 | 3 + 0.25 |

Table 12-23 Oil quantities in l for CF, sizes 39 - 89

| Type | Mounting position | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **M1** | **M2** | **M3** | **M4** | **M5** | **M6** |
| CF39A-Z19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.96 + 0.5 | 0.84 + 0.15 | 0.83 + 0.5 | 0.51 + 0.15 | 0.48 + 0.15 |
| CF39-Z19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.5 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.5 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 0.65 + 0.15 |
| CF49-Z19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.5 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.5 | 1.2 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.15 |
| CF69-Z19 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 2.6 + 0.5 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.5 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| CF89-Z39 | 1.4 + 0.3 | 4.4 + 0.95 | 5 + 0.3 | 5.4 + 1 | 3 + 0.3 | 3 + 0.3 |
| CF39A-D19 | 0.2 + 0.15 | 0.96 + 0.5 | 0.84 + 0.15 | 0.83 + 0.5 | 0.51 + 0.15 | 0.48 + 0.15 |
| CF39-D19 | 0.3 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.45 | 1 + 0.15 | 1.1 + 0.45 | 0.65 + 0.15 | 0.65 + 0.15 |
| CF49-D19 | 0.6 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.45 | 1.9 + 0.15 | 2 + 0.45 | 1.2 + 0.15 | 1.2 + 0.15 |
| CF69-D19 | 0.8 + 0.15 | 2.6 + 0.45 | 2.6 + 0.15 | 3 + 0.45 | 1.6 + 0.15 | 1.6 + 0.15 |
| CF89-D39 | 1.4 + 0.25 | 4.4 + 0.9 | 5 + 0.25 | 5.4 + 0.9 | 3 + 0.25 | 3 + 0.25 |

# Spare parts

# 13

## 13.1 Stocking of spare parts

By stocking the most important spare and wearing parts on site, you can ensure that the gearbox or geared motor is ready for use at any time.

| NOTICE |
| --- |
| **Safety impairment caused by inferior products**<br>The installation and / or use of inferior products has a negative impact on the design characteristics of the geared motor. As a consequence, active and / or passive safety is diminished.<br>Siemens explicitly states that only spare parts and accessories supplied by Siemens have been tested and approved by Siemens.<br>If you do not use original spare parts and original accessories, Siemens excludes any liability and warranty.<br>Siemens accepts the warranty only for original spare parts. |

Note that special manufacturing and delivery specifications often apply to individual components. All spare parts offered by Siemens are state-of-the-art and conform to the latest legal regulations.

Please state the following data when ordering spare parts:

- Serial number shown on the rating plate ③
- Type designation shown on the rating plate ⑥
- Part number
  - 3-digit and/or 4-digit position number from the spare parts list
  - 6-digit object number
  - 7-digit article number
  - 14-digit material number
- Quantity

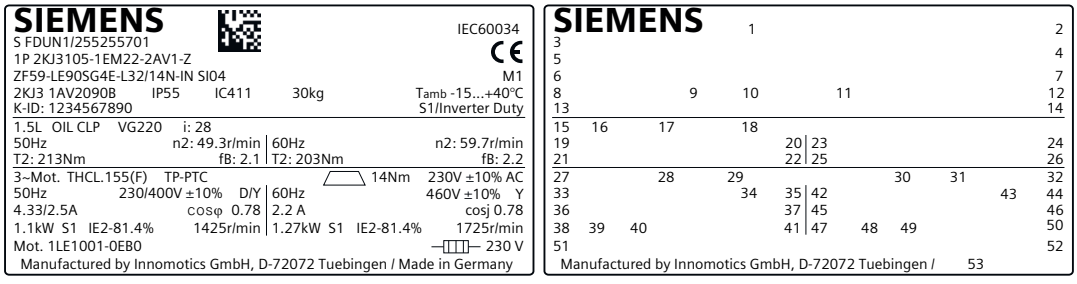



Figure 13-1 Example of a SIMOGEAR rating plate

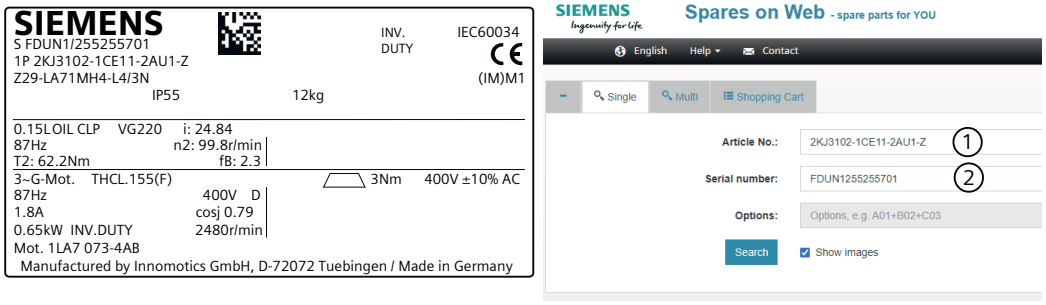
For motors with their own rating plate, the spare parts documentation in the original operating instructions applies.

## 13.2 Spares on Web

**Rapid support around the clock – SIMOGEAR Service**

Service is your partner for comprehensive support and innovative services for increasing your productivity. The original parts and manufacturing expertise help you achieve maximum machine availability and productivity. The proven services therefore contribute to reducing the total cost of ownership for you, as well as to creating sustainable values and solutions.

The technical product lists are provided in Spares on Web (https://www.sow.siemens.com/?lang=en).




① Article number

② Serial number

Figure 13-2 Enter a sample article and serial number in Spares on Web

### Procedure

1. Open the spare parts list with the link provided.
2. In the field ①, enter the "Article No." stated on the rating plate or SIMOGEAR.
   Example: 2KJ3102-1CE11-2AU-Z or SIMOGEAR
3. In the field ② "Serial number", enter the production number stated on the rating plate or only the abbreviated number.
   Example: FDUN1/255255701 or 2552557
4. You can directly access the operating instructions via "Industry Online Support (SIOS)".
5. Use the "Search" function to display the spare parts list.
6. The installation positions of the listed spare parts can be determined based on the position numbers specified in column "BKZ" (equipment marking) and the spare part drawings in Chapter Spare parts lists (Page 189) .

You have opened the spare parts list through Spares on Web.

# 13.3 Spare parts lists

## 13.3.1 Helical gearbox E, sizes 39 - 149

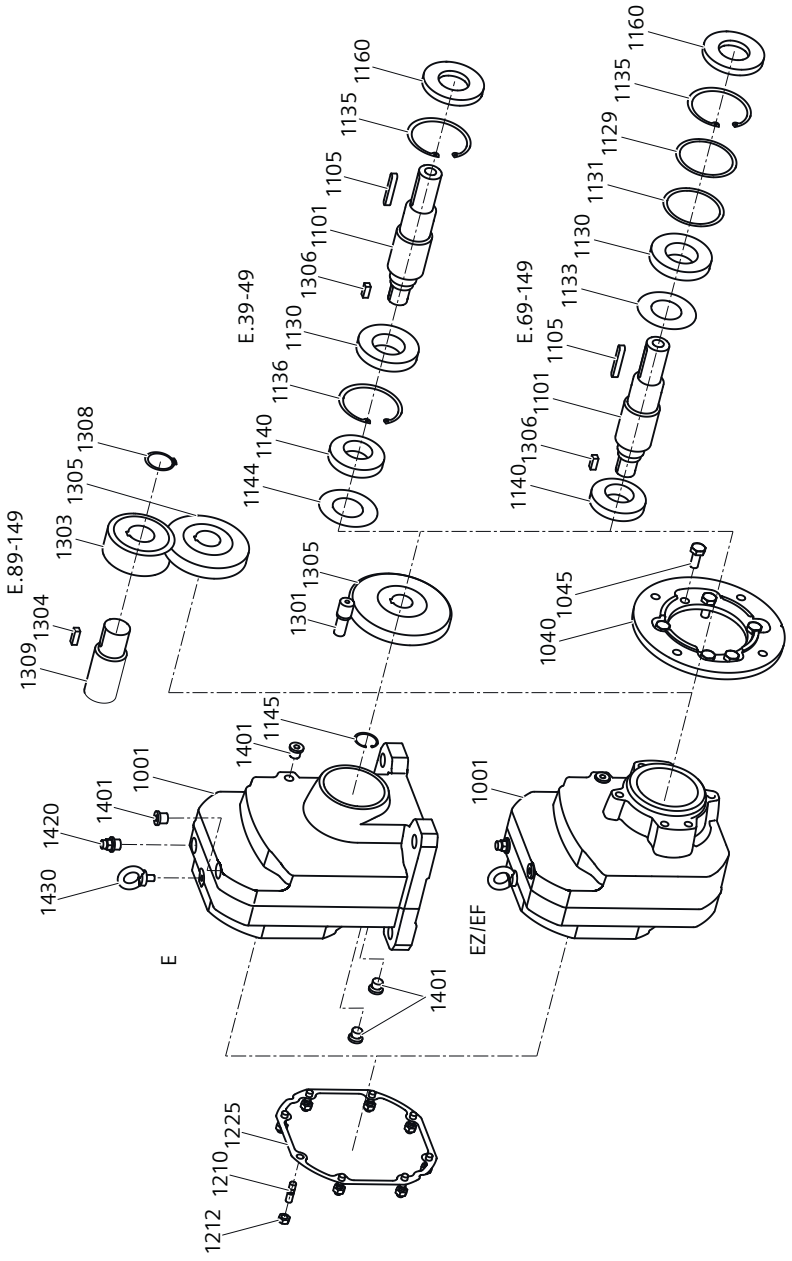



Figure 13-3 Helical gearbox E, sizes 39 - 149

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1001 | Gearbox housing | 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1040 | Output flange | 1210 | Screw |
| 1045 | Screw | 1212 | Nut |
| 1101 | Output shaft | 1225 | Seal |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1105 | Feather key |
| 1129 | Supporting disk |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1131 | Shim |
| 1133 | NILOS ring |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1136 | Locking ring |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1144 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1145 | Locking ring |
| 1301 | Shank pinion |
| 1303 | Shell pinion |
| 1304 | Feather key |
| 1305 | Helical gear |
| 1306 | Feather key |
| 1308 | Locking ring |
| 1309 | Seal |
| 1401 | Screw plug |
| 1420 | Vent filter |
| 1430 | Lifting eyebolt |

## 13.3.2 Helical gearbox D / Z, sizes 19 - 189

**Note**

For gearbox sizes 19 and 29, Siemens recommends replacement of the gearbox if service is required.

Parts subject to wear are available on request.

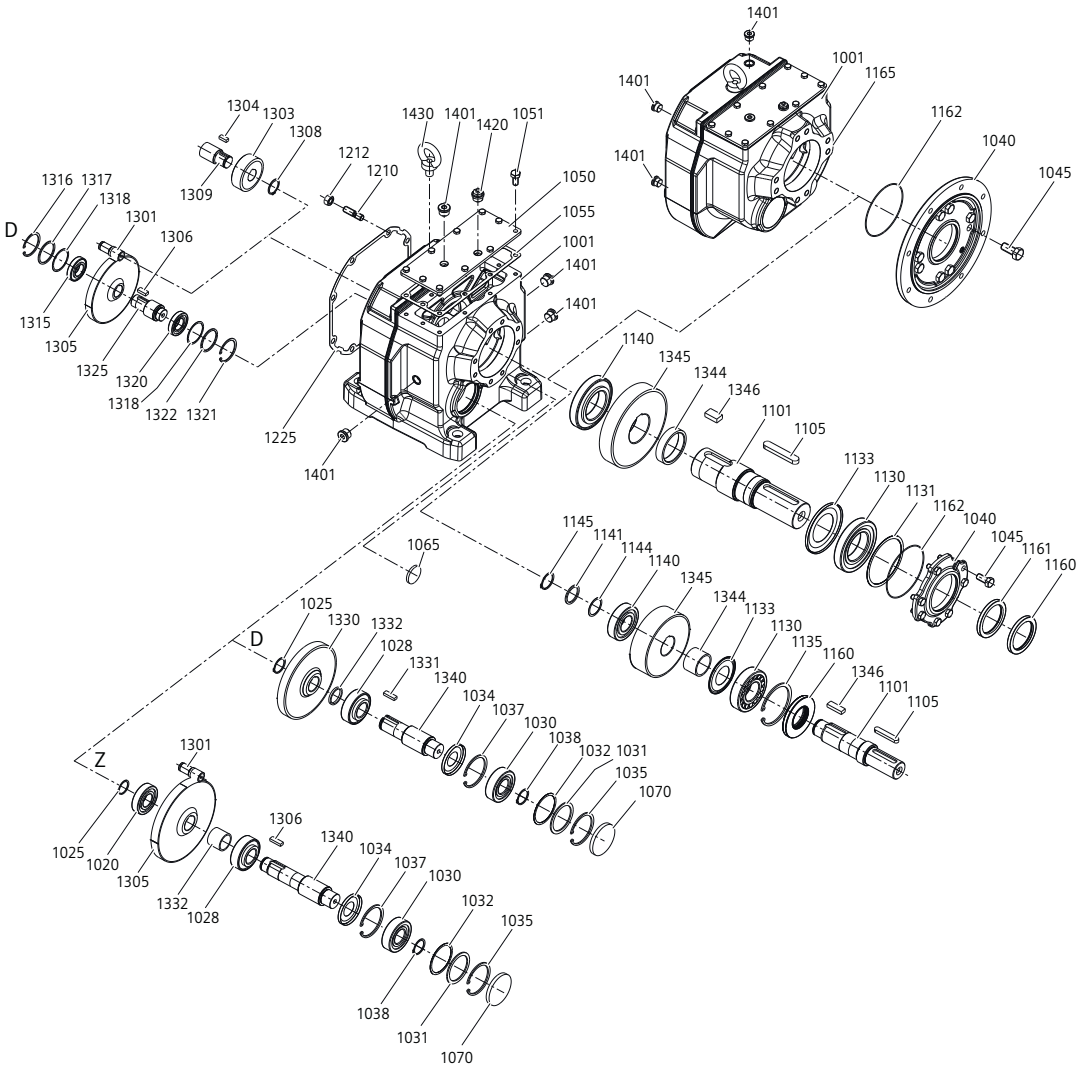



Figure 13-4 Helical gearbox D / Z, sizes 19 - 189

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1001 | Gearbox housing | 1162 | O-ring |
| 1020 | Bearing | 1165 | Seal |
| 1025 | Locking ring | 1210 | Screw |
| 1028 | Bearing | 1212 | Nut |
| 1030 | Bearing | 1225 | Seal |

| | |
|---|---|
| 1031 | Supporting disk |
| 1032 | Shim |
| 1034 | NILOS ring |
| 1035 | Locking ring |
| 1037 | Locking ring |
| 1038 | Locking ring |
| 1040 | Output flange |
| 1045 | Screw |
| 1050 | Housing cover |
| 1051 | Screw |
| 1055 | Seal |
| 1065 | Sealing cap |
| 1070 | Sealing cap |
| 1101 | Output shaft |
| 1105 | Feather key |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1131 | Shim |
| 1133 | NILOS ring |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1141 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1144 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1145 | Locking ring |
| 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1161 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1301 | Shank pinion |
| 1303 | Shell pinion |
| 1304 | Feather key |
| 1305 | Helical gear |
| 1306 | Feather key |
| 1308 | Locking ring |
| 1309 | Seal |
| 1315 | Bearing |
| 1316 | Locking ring |
| 1317 | Supporting disk |
| 1318 | Supporting disk |
| 1320 | Bearing |
| 1321 | Locking ring |
| 1322 | Supporting disk |
| 1325 | Pinion shaft |
| 1330 | Helical gear |
| 1331 | Feather key |
| 1332 | Bush / locking ring |
| 1340 | Pinion shaft |
| 1344 | Sleeve / bushing |
| 1345 | Helical gear |
| 1346 | Feather key |
| 1401 | Screw plug |
| 1420 | Vent filter |
| 1430 | Lifting eyebolt |

## 13.3.3 Parallel shaft gearbox F, sizes 29 - 189

**Note**

For gearbox size 29, Siemens recommends replacement of the gearbox if service is required.

Parts subject to wear are available on request.

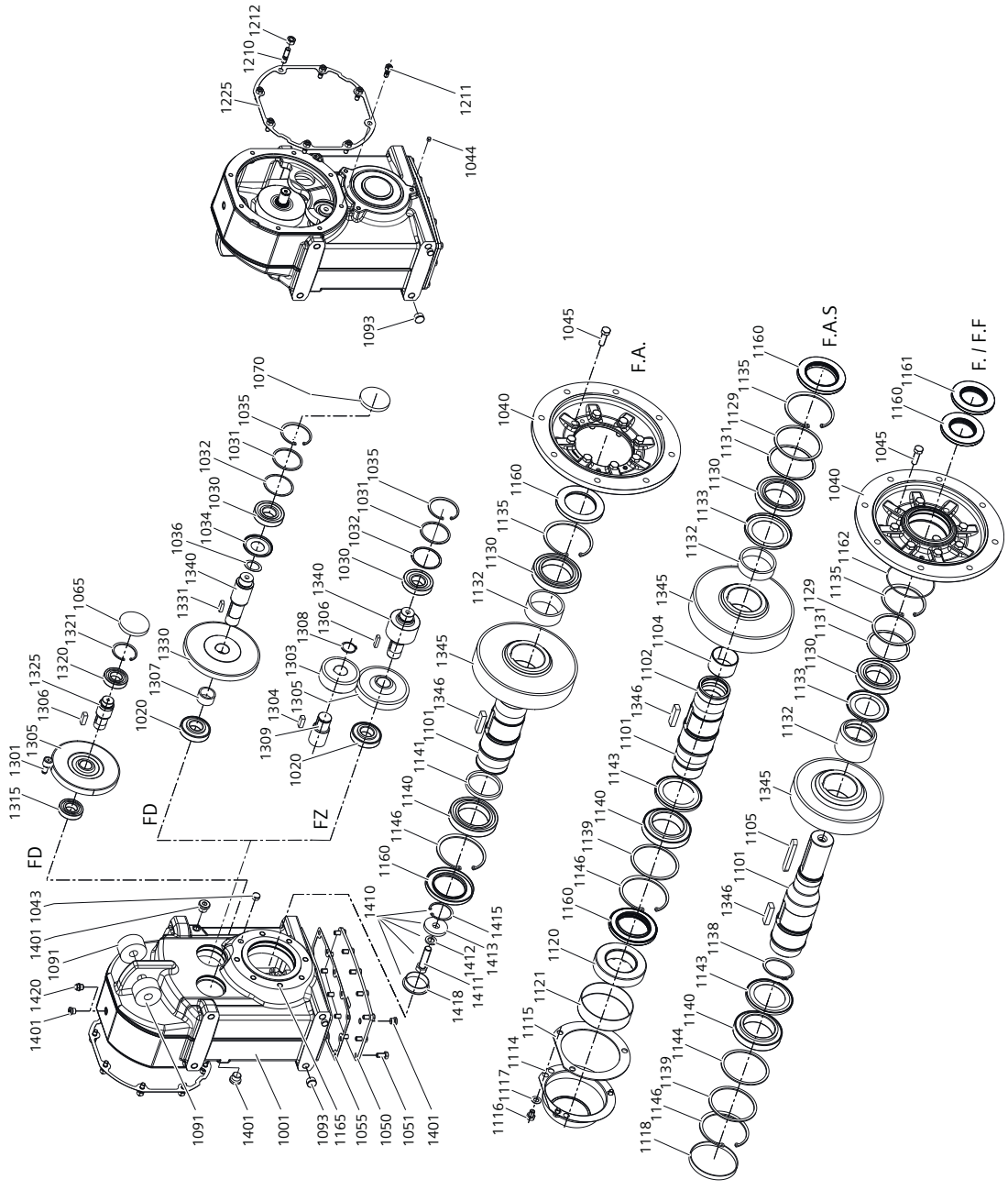



Figure 13-5 Parallel shaft gearbox F, sizes 29-189

| | |
|---|---|
| 1001 | Gearbox housing |
| 1020 | Bearing |
| 1030 | Bearing |
| 1031 | Supporting disk |
| 1032 | Shim |
| 1034 | NILOS ring |
| 1035 | Locking ring |
| 1036 | Shim |
| 1040 | Output flange |
| 1043 | Plug |
| 1044 | Plug |
| 1045 | Screw |
| 1050 | Housing cover |
| 1051 | Screw |
| 1055 | Seal |
| 1065 | Sealing cap |
| 1070 | Sealing cap |
| 1091 | Rubber bush |
| 1093 | Plug |
| 1101 | Output shaft |
| 1102 | Bushing |
| 1104 | Seal |
| 1105 | Feather key |
| 1114 | Cover NDE |
| 1115 | Seal |
| 1116 | Screw |
| 1117 | Screw lock washer |
| 1118 | Plug / sealing cap |
| 1120 | Shrink disk |
| 1121 | Protective cap |
| 1129 | Supporting disk |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1131 | Shim |
| 1132 | Bushing |
| 1133 | NILOS ring |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1138 | Locking ring |
| 1139 | Supporting disk |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1141 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1143 | NILOS ring |
| 1144 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1146 | Locking ring |
| 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1161 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1162 | O-ring |
| 1165 | Seal |
| 1210 | Screw |
| 1211 | Screw lock washer |
| 1212 | Nut |
| 1225 | Seal |
| 1301 | Shank pinion |
| 1303 | Shell pinion |
| 1304 | Feather key |
| 1305 | Helical gear |
| 1306 | Feather key |
| 1307 | Sleeve / bushing |
| 1308 | Locking ring |
| 1309 | Seal |
| 1315 | Bearing |
| 1320 | Bearing |
| 1321 | Locking ring |
| 1325 | Pinion shaft |
| 1330 | Helical gear |
| 1331 | Feather key |
| 1340 | Pinion shaft |
| 1345 | Helical gear |
| 1346 | Feather key |
| 1401 | Screw plug |
| 1410 | Mounting accessories |
| 1411 | Screw |
| 1412 | Locking ring |
| 1413 | Disk |
| 1415 | Locking ring |
| 1418 | Sealing cap |
| 1420 | Vent filter |

## 13.3.4 Bevel gearbox B, sizes 19 - 49

**Note**

For gearbox sizes 19 and 29, Siemens recommends replacement of the gearbox if service is required.

Parts subject to wear are available on request.

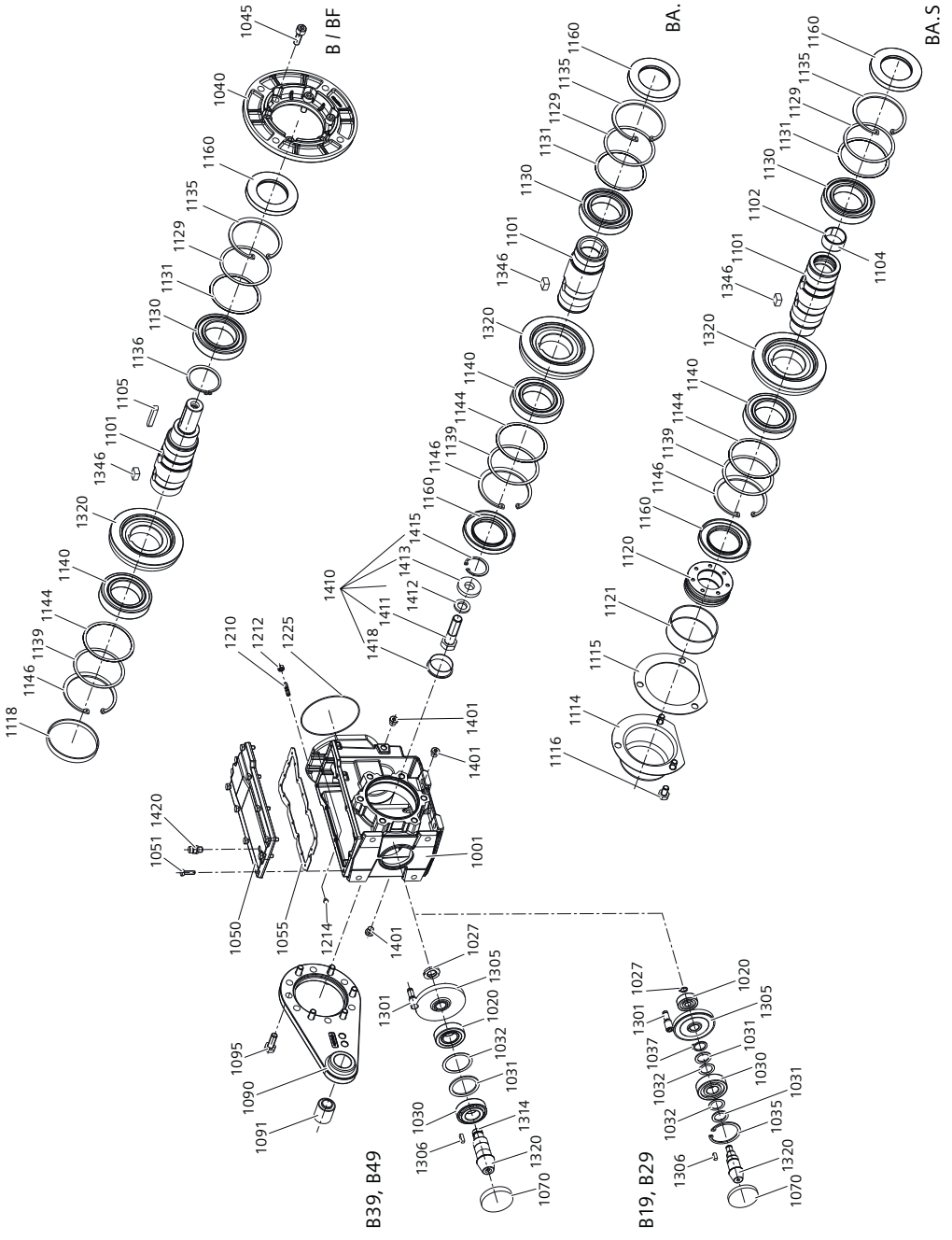



Figure 13-6 Bevel gearbox B, sizes 19 - 49

| | |
|---|---|
| 1001 | Gearbox housing |
| 1020 | Bearing |
| 1027 | Locking ring / nut |
| 1030 | Bearing |
| 1031 | Supporting disk |
| 1032 | Shim |
| 1035 | Locking ring |
| 1037 | Locking ring |
| 1040 | Output flange |
| 1045 | Screw |
| 1050 | Housing cover |
| 1051 | Screw |
| 1055 | Seal |
| 1070 | Sealing cap |
| 1090 | Torque arm |
| 1091 | Rubber bush |
| 1095 | Screw |
| 1101 | Output shaft |
| 1102 | Bushing |
| 1104 | Seal |
| 1105 | Feather key |
| 1114 | Cover NDE |
| 1115 | Seal |
| 1116 | Screw |
| 1118 | Plug / sealing cap |
| 1120 | Shrink disk |
| 1121 | Protective cap |
| 1129 | Supporting disk |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1131 | Shim |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1136 | Locking ring |
| 1139 | Supporting disk |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1144 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1146 | Locking ring |
| 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1210 | Screw |
| 1212 | Nut |
| 1214 | Plug |
| 1225 | Seal |
| 1301 | Shank pinion |
| 1305 | Helical gear |
| 1306 | Feather key |
| 1314 | Screw lock washer |
| 1320 | Bevel gear pair |
| 1346 | Feather key |
| 1401 | Screw plug |
| 1410 | Mounting accessories |
| 1411 | Screw |
| 1412 | Locking ring |
| 1413 | Disk |
| 1415 | Locking ring |
| 1418 | Sealing cap |
| 1420 | Vent filter |

## 13.3.5 Bevel gearbox K, sizes 39 - 189

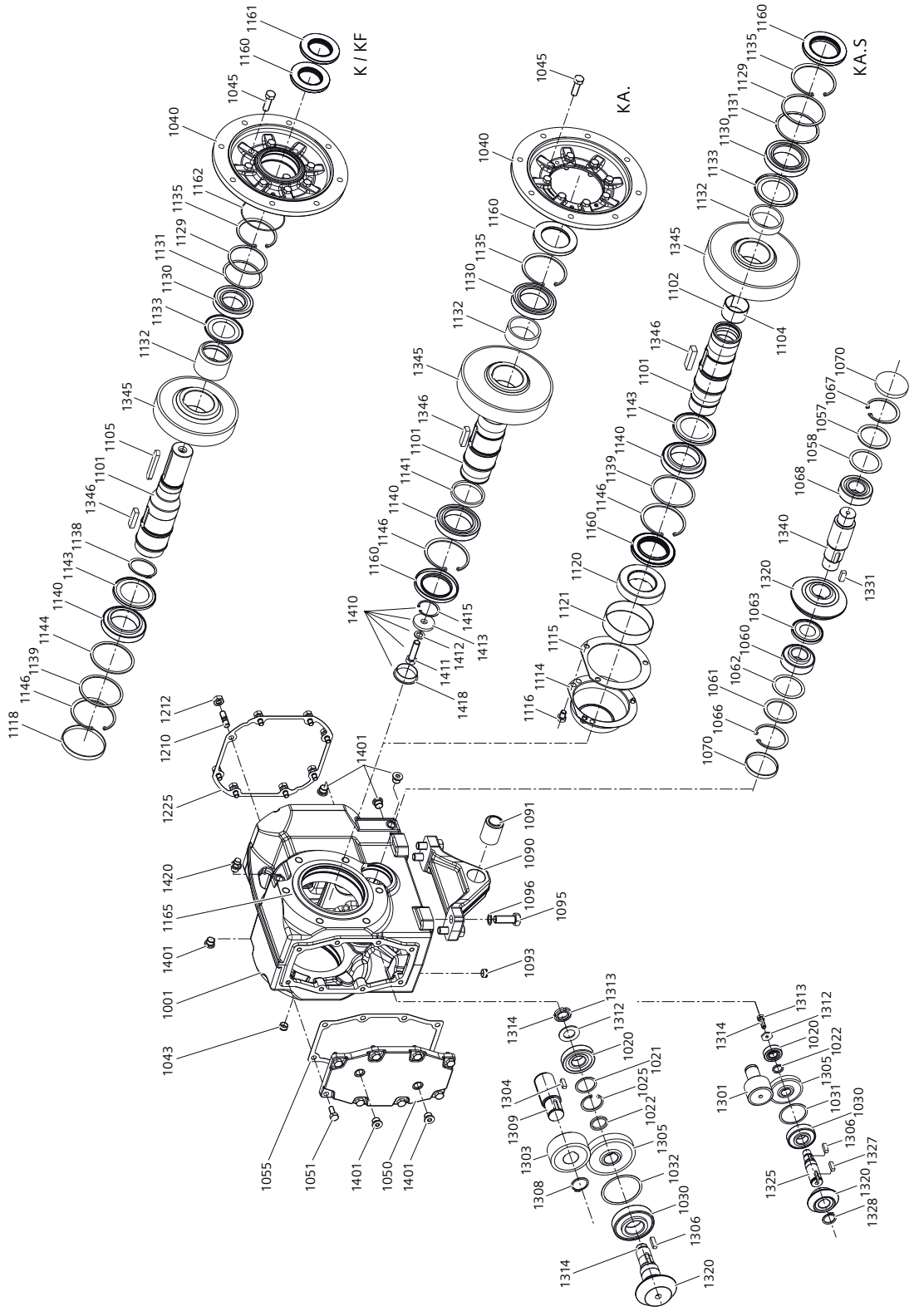



Figure 13-7 Bevel gearbox K, sizes 39 - 189

| | |
|---|---|
| 1001 | Gearbox housing |
| 1020 | Bearing |
| 1021 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1022 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1025 | Locking ring |
| 1030 | Bearing |
| 1031 | Supporting disk |
| 1032 | Shim |
| 1040 | Output flange |
| 1043 | Plug |
| 1045 | Screw |
| 1050 | Housing cover |
| 1051 | Screw |
| 1055 | Seal |
| 1057 | Supporting disk |
| 1058 | Shim |
| 1060 | Tapered roller bearing |
| 1061 | Supporting disk |
| 1062 | Shim |
| 1063 | NILOS ring |
| 1066 | Locking ring |
| 1067 | Locking ring |
| 1068 | Tapered roller bearing |
| 1070 | Sealing cap |
| 1090 | Torque arm |
| 1091 | Rubber bush |
| 1093 | Plug |
| 1095 | Screw |
| 1096 | Screw lock washer |
| 1101 | Output shaft |
| 1102 | Bushing |
| 1104 | Seal |
| 1105 | Feather key |
| 1114 | Cover NDE |
| 1115 | Seal |
| 1116 | Screw |
| 1118 | Plug / sealing cap |
| 1120 | Shrink disk |
| 1121 | Protective cap |
| 1129 | Supporting disk |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1133 | NILOS ring |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1138 | Locking ring |
| 1139 | Supporting disk |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1141 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1143 | NILOS ring |
| 1144 | Supporting disk/shim |
| 1146 | Locking ring |
| 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1161 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1162 | O-ring |
| 1165 | Seal |
| 1210 | Screw |
| 1212 | Nut |
| 1225 | Seal |
| 1301 | Shank pinion |
| 1303 | Shell pinion |
| 1304 | Feather key |
| 1305 | Helical gear |
| 1306 | Feather key |
| 1308 | Locking ring |
| 1309 | Seal |
| 1312 | Disk |
| 1313 | Bolt/nut |
| 1314 | Screw lock washer |
| 1320 | Bevel gear pair |
| 1325 | Pinion shaft |
| 1327 | Feather key |
| 1328 | Locking ring |
| 1331 | Feather key |
| 1340 | Pinion shaft |
| 1345 | Helical gear |
| 1346 | Feather key |
| 1401 | Screw plug |
| 1410 | Mounting accessories |
| 1411 | Screw |
| 1412 | Locking ring |
| 1413 | Disk |
| 1415 | Locking ring |
| 1418 | Sealing cap |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1131 | Shim | 1420 | Vent filter |
| 1132 | Supporting ring / shim | | |

## 13.3.6 Helical worm gearbox C, sizes 29 - 89

**Note**

For gearbox size 29, Siemens recommends replacement of the gearbox if service is required.

Parts subject to wear are available on request.

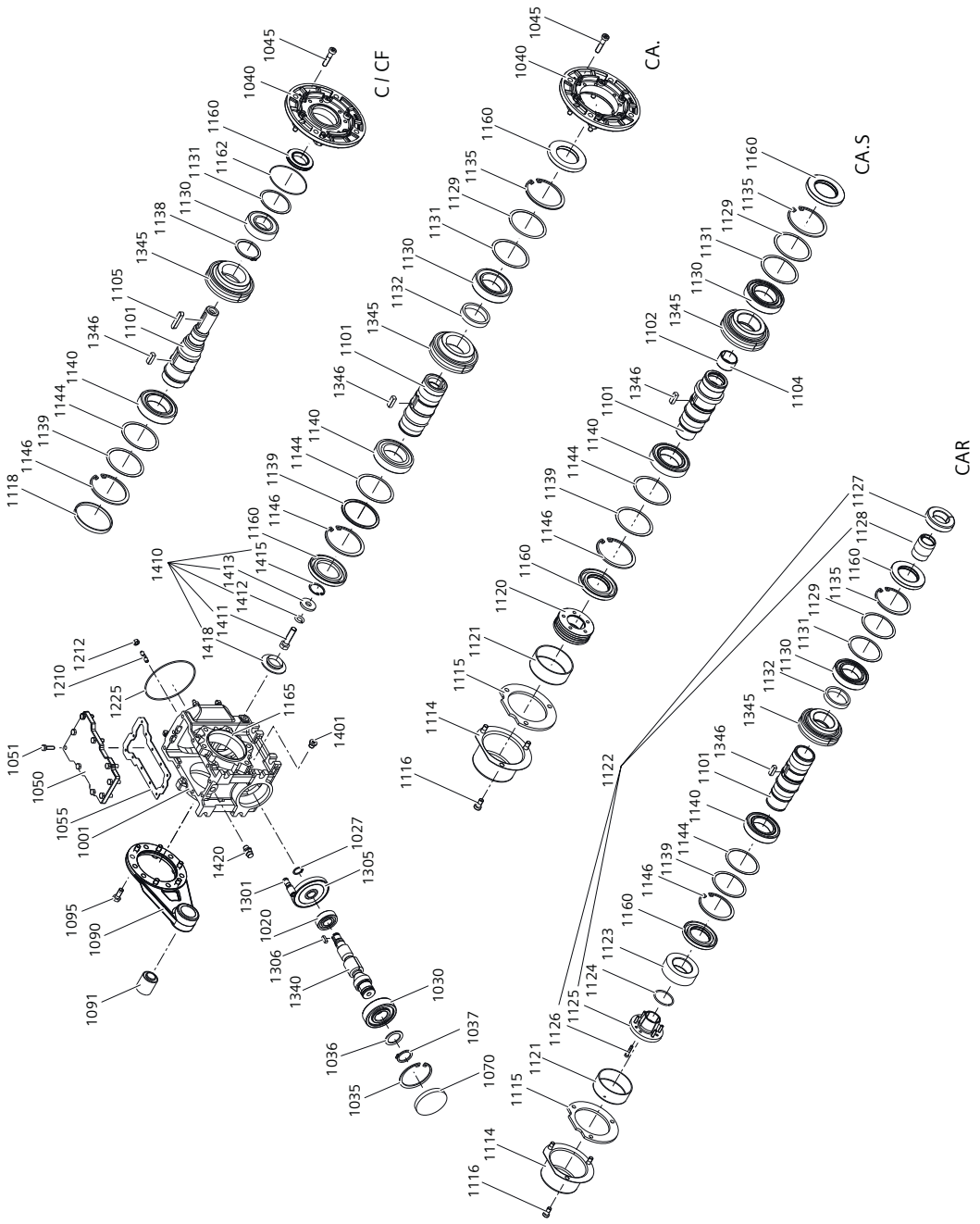



Figure 13-8 Helical worm gearbox C, sizes 29 - 89

| | |
|---|---|
| 1001 | Gearbox housing |
| 1020 | Bearing |
| 1025 | Locking ring |
| 1027 | Locking ring |
| 1030 | Bearing |
| 1035 | Locking ring |
| 1036 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1037 | Locking ring |
| 1040 | Output flange |
| 1045 | Screw |
| 1050 | Housing cover |
| 1051 | Screw |
| 1055 | Seal |
| 1070 | Sealing cap |
| 1090 | Torque arm |
| 1091 | Rubber bush |
| 1095 | Screw |
| 1101 | Output shaft |
| 1102 | Bushing |
| 1104 | Seal |
| 1105 | Feather key |
| 1114 | Cover NDE |
| 1115 | Seal |
| 1116 | Screw |
| 1118 | Plug / sealing cap |
| 1120 | Shrink disk |
| 1121 | Protective cap |
| 1129 | Supporting disk |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1131 | Shim |
| 1132 | Supporting ring / shim |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1138 | Locking ring |
| 1139 | Supporting disk |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1144 | Shim |
| 1146 | Locking ring |
| 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1162 | O-ring |
| 1165 | Seal |
| 1210 | Screw |
| 1212 | Nut |
| 1225 | Seal |
| 1301 | Shank pinion |
| 1305 | Helical gear |
| 1306 | Feather key |
| 1340 | Pinion shaft |
| 1345 | Helical gear |
| 1346 | Feather key |
| 1401 | Screw plug |
| 1410 | Mounting accessories |
| 1411 | Screw |
| 1412 | Locking ring |
| 1413 | Disk |
| 1415 | Locking ring |
| 1418 | Sealing cap |
| 1420 | Vent filter |

## 13.3.7 Worm geared motor S, frame sizes 09 - 29

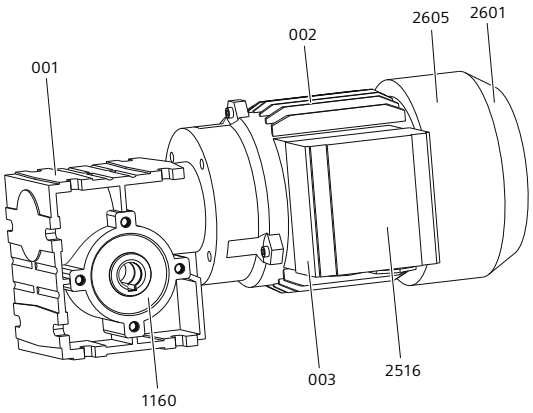



Figure 13-9 Worm geared motor S, frame sizes 09 - 29

001 Worm gearbox, complete
002 Complete motor LEI63/71
003 Terminal box, complete
1160 Shaft sealing ring
2516 Terminal board, complete
2601 Fan
2605 Fan cover

## 13.3.8 SIMOLOC assembly system, sizes 29 - 89

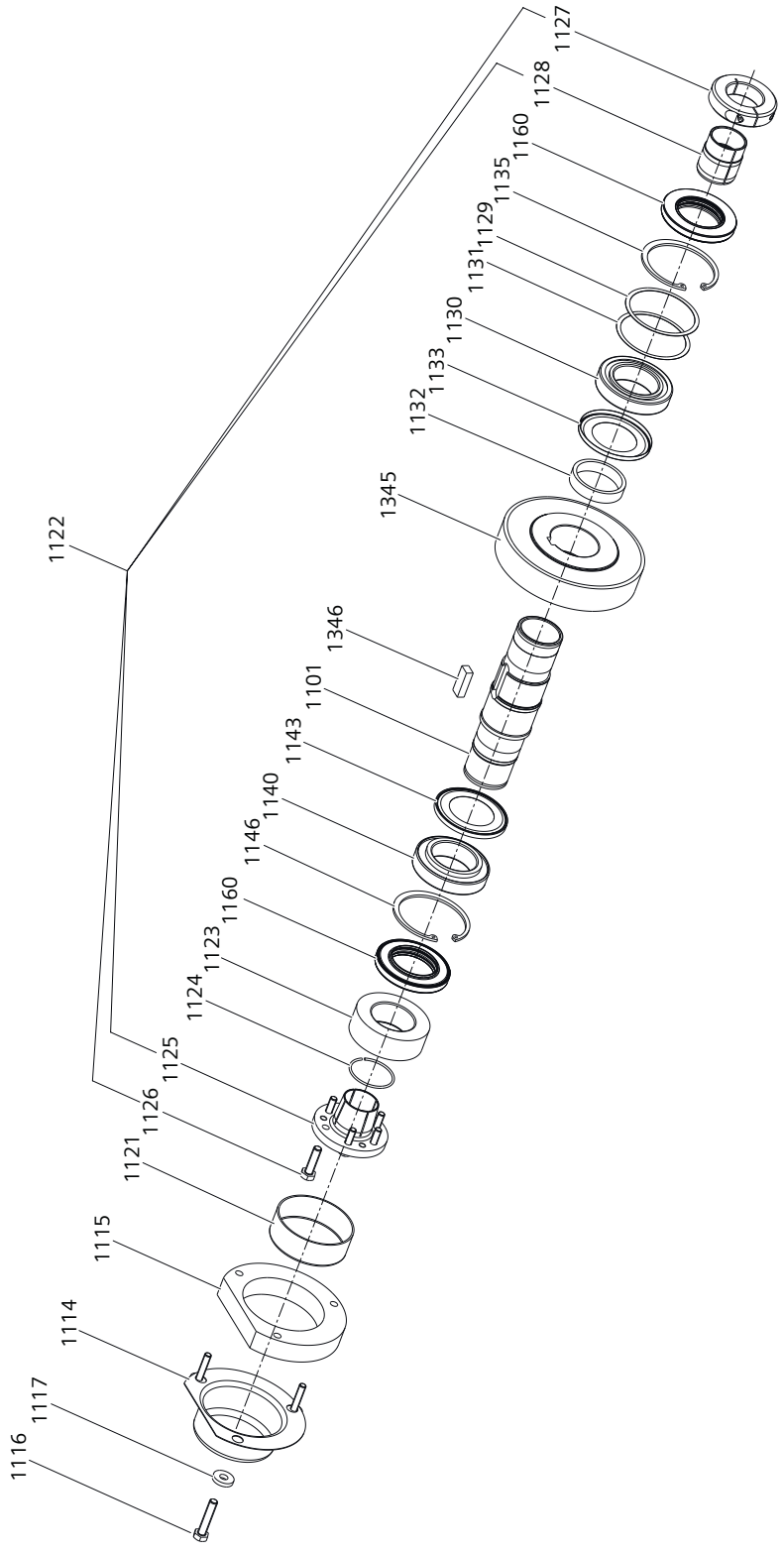



Figure 13-10 SIMOLOC assembly system, sizes 29 - 89

| | |
|---|---|
| 1101 | Output shaft |
| 1114 | Cover NDE |
| 1115 | Seal |
| 1116 | Screw |
| 1117 | Screw lock washer |
| 1121 | Protective cap |
| 1122 | SIMOLOC mounting kit |
| 1123 | Thrust collar |
| 1124 | Snap ring |
| 1125 | Tapered bushing |
| 1126 | Screw |
| 1127 | Clamping ring |
| 1128 | Bushing |
| 1129 | Supporting disk |
| 1130 | Bearing |
| 1131 | Shim |
| 1132 | Bushing |
| 1133 | NILOS ring |
| 1135 | Locking ring |
| 1140 | Bearing |
| 1143 | NILOS ring |
| 1146 | Locking ring |
| 1160 | Shaft sealing ring |
| 1345 | Helical gear |
| 1346 | Feather key |

# Declaration of incorporation of partly completed machinery, Declaration of Conformity

# 14

# Einbauerklärung
# *Declaration of incorporation*

Nr./*No.* A5E36963968AG

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Produktbezeichnung:<br>*Product identification:* | Getriebe mit Adapter 2KJ3...<br>*Gearbox with adapter 2KJ3...* | |
| Typ:<br>*Type:* | A... – B... – C... | |
| Getriebe:<br>*Gearbox*: | A... | = [A = E, Z, D, F, B, K, C, S] |
| Adapter:<br>*Adapter*: | B... | = [B = K, A] |
| ATEX-Ausführung:<br>*ATEX-version* | C... | = [C = _, 1] |
| Hersteller:<br>*Manufacturer* | Innomotics GmbH | |
| Anschrift:<br>*Address* | Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen | |

| | |
|---|---|
| Name, Anschrift bevollmächtigte Person für technische Unterlagen:<br>*Name, address of authorised person for technical file:* | Innomotics GmbH<br>Xingjian Chen<br>Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen |

**Die alleinige Verantwortung für die Ausstellung dieser Einbauerklärung trägt der Hersteller.**

***This declaration of incorporation is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.***

**Der oben beschriebene Gegenstand der Erklärung erfüllt die einschlägigen Harmonisierungsrechtsvorschriften der Union:**

***The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:***

**Maschinenrichtlinie:**

**2006/42/EG** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 17. Mai 2006 über Maschinen und zur Änderung der Richtlinie 95/16/EG

***Machinery Directive:***

***2006/42/EC*** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 17 May 2006 on machinery, and amending Directive 95/16/EC*

**Weitere Angaben über die Einhaltung dieser Richtlinie(n) enthält Anhang MR2, der ein integraler Bestandteil dieser Erklärung ist.**

***Further information about the conformity to this Directive(s) is given in Annex MR2, which is an integral part of this declaration.***

**Harmonisierte Normen / *Harmonised standards*:**

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| EN ISO 12100 ..... | 2010 ..... | ..... | ..... |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung
# *Declaration of incorporation*

Nr. / No. A5E36963968AG

**Das bezeichnete Produkt ist eine unvollständige Maschine im Sinne von Art. 2 g) der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG. Sie ist nur dazu bestimmt, in andere Maschinen oder in andere unvollständige Maschinen oder Ausrüstungen eingebaut oder mit ihnen zusammengefügt zu werden.**
*The designated product is a partly completed machinery in the sense of Art 2 g) of Directive 2006/42/EC. It is only intended to be incorporated into or assembled with other machinery or other partly completed machinery or equipment.*

**Die relevanten, angewendeten und eingehaltenen grundlegenden Anforderungen nach Anhang I der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG sind im Anhang MR2 zu dieser Erklärung aufgeführt.**
*The relevant, applied and fulfilled essential requirements of Annex I of Directive 2006/42/EC are listed in Annex MR2 of this declaration.*

**Die speziellen technischen Unterlagen nach Anhang VII, B der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG wurden erstellt und werden den Behörden auf begründete Anforderung in ☒ elektronischer / ☐ Papierform zur Verfügung gestellt.**
*The relevant technical documentation according to Annex VII, B of Directive 2006/42/EC has been compiled and will be provided to the authorities upon request in ☒ electronic / ☐ paper form.*

**Die unvollständige Maschine darf erst dann in Betrieb genommen werden, wenn gegebenenfalls festgestellt wurde, dass die Maschine, in die die unvollständige Maschine eingebaut werden soll, den Bestimmungen der Maschinenrichtlinie 2006/42/EG entspricht.**
*The partly completed machinery must not be put into service until the final machinery into which it is to be incorporated has been declared in conformity with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC, where appropriate.*

Unterzeichnet für und im Namen von: / *Signed for and on behalf of:*
Innomotics GmbH

Tübingen, 18. September 2023
Ort / *place*, Datum der Ausstellung / *date of issue*

Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Digital unterschrieben von Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Datum: 2023.10.19 18:19:50 +02'00'

i. V. Kaan Tasarsu
Head GM

Chen Xingjian
Digital signiert von Chen Xingjian
DN: cn=Chen Xingjian, o=Siemens, email=xingjian.chen@siemens.com
Grund: Ich bin mit den angegebenen Teilen dieses Dokuments einverstanden
Datum: 2023.09.20 18:33:36 +02'00'

i. V. Xingjian Chen
Head Research & Development GM

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Anhang MR2
# zur Einbauerklärung

Nr. / No. A5E36963968AG

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebe mit Adapter 2KJ3...

Die folgenden grundlegenden Sicherheits- und Gesundheitsschutzanforderungen der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG, Anh. I, sind für die oben genannte unvollständige Maschine relevant und wurden entsprechend der Angabe in Spalte 3 erfüllt bzw. zeigen noch Restgefahren, die vom Hersteller der Gesamtmaschine zu beachten sind. Die für das Produkt nicht relevanten Risiken sind nicht aufgeführt.

| 2006/42/EG Anh. I | Bezeichnung | Anforderung erfüllt | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | j/n | Weitere Hinweise |
| **1** | **Grundlegende Sicherheits- und Gesundheistsschutz-anforderungen** | | |
| 1.1.2 | Grundsätze für die Integration der Sicherheit | j | |
| 1.1.3 | Materialien und Produkte | j | |
| 1.1.5 | Konstruktion der Maschine im Hinblick auf die Handhabung | j | |
| **1.3** | **Schutzmaßnahmen gegen mechanische Gefährdungen** | | |
| 1.3.1 | Risiko des Verlusts der Standsicherheit | j | |
| 1.3.2 | Bruchrisiko beim Betrieb | j | |
| 1.3.3 | Risiken durch herabfallende oder herausgeschleuderte Gegenstände | j | |
| 1.3.4 | Risiken durch Oberflächen, Kanten und Ecken | j | |
| 1.3.8.1 | Bewegliche Teile der Kraftübertragung | j | |
| **1.4** | **Anforderungen an Schutzeinrichtungen** | | |
| 1.4.1 | Allgemeine Anforderungen | j | |
| 1.4.2 | Besondere Anforderungen an trennende Schutzeinrichtungen | j | |
| 1.4.2.1 | Feststehende trennende Schutzeinrichtungen | j | |
| **1.5** | **Risiken durch sonstige Gefährdungen** | | |
| 1.5.4 | Montagefehler | j | |
| 1.5.5 | Extreme Temperaturen | j | |
| 1.5.6 | Brand | j | |
| 1.5.8 | Lärm | j | |
| 1.5.9 | Vibrationen | j | |
| 1.5.13 | Emission gefährlicher Werkstoffe und Substanzen | j | |
| **1.6** | **Instandhaltung** | | |
| 1.6.1 | Wartung der Maschine | j | |
| 1.6.2 | Zugang zu den Bedienungsständen und den Eingriffspunkten für die Instandhaltung | j | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang MR2
## zur Einbauerklärung

Nr. / No. A5E36963968AG

| **1.7** | **Informationen** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.7.1 | Informationen und Warnhinweise an der Maschine | j | |
| 1.7.2 | Warnung vor Restrisiken | j | |
| 1.7.3 | Kennzeichnung der Maschinen | j | |
| 1.7.4 | Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.1 | Allgemeine Grundsätze für die Abfassung der Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.2 | Inhalt der Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.3 | Verkaufsprospekte | j | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## *Annex MR2*
## *to the declaration of incorporation*

Nr. / No. A5E36963968AG

*Product identification:* Gearbox with adapter 2KJ3...

*The following essential health and safety requirements of Directive 2006/42/EG, Annex I are relevant for the identified uncompleted machinery. According to the remarks in column 3 they have been solved respectively bear residual hazards which have to be covered by the manufacturer of the final machinery. Risks, not being relevant for the uncompleted machinery are not listed.*

| ***2006/42/EC Annex I*** | ***Denotation*** | ***Requirement fulfilled*** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | ***y/n*** | ***Additional remark*** |
| ***1*** | ***Essential health and safety requirements*** | | |
| *1.1.2* | *Principles of safety integration* | *y* | |
| *1.1.3* | *Materials and products* | *y* | |
| *1.1.5* | *Design of machinery to facilitate its handling* | *y* | |
| ***1.3*** | ***Protection against mechanical hazards*** | | |
| *1.3.1* | *Risk of loss of stability* | *y* | |
| *1.3.2* | *Risk of break-up during operation* | *y* | |
| *1.3.3* | *Risks due to falling or ejected objects* | *y* | |
| *1.3.4* | *Risks due to surfaces, edges or angles* | *y* | |
| *1.3.8.1* | *Moving transmission parts* | *y* | |
| ***1.4*** | ***Required characteristics of guards and protective devices*** | | |
| *1.4.1* | *General requirements* | *y* | |
| *1.4.2* | *Special requirements for guards* | *y* | |
| *1.4.2.1* | *Fixed guards* | *y* | |
| ***1.5*** | ***Risks due to other hazards*** | | |
| *1.5.4* | *Errors of fitting* | *y* | |
| *1.5.5* | *Extreme temperatures* | *y* | |
| *1.5.6* | *Fire* | *y* | |
| *1.5.8* | *Noise* | *y* | |
| *1.5.9* | *Vibrations* | *y* | |
| *1.5.13* | *Emissions of hazardous materials and substances* | *y* | |
| ***1.6*** | ***Maintenance*** | | |
| *1.6.1* | *Machinery maintenance* | *y* | |
| *1.6.2* | *Access to operating positions and servicing points* | *y* | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## *Annex MR2*
## *to the declaration of incorporation*

Nr. / No. A5E36963968AG

| ***1.7*** | ***Information*** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *1.7.1* | *Information and warnings on the machinery* | *y* | |
| *1.7.2* | *Warning of residual risks* | *y* | |
| *1.7.3* | *Marking of machinery* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4* | *Instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.1* | *General principles for the drafting of instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.2* | *Contents of the instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.3* | *Sales literature* | *y* | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# EU-Konformitätserklärung / *EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E43968284AE

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Produktbezeichnung:<br>*Product identification:* | Getriebe mit Adapter 2KJ3...<br>*Gearbox with adapter 2KJ3...* | |
| Typ*:*<br>*Type:* | A... – B... – C... | |
| Getriebe:<br>*Gearbox:* | A... | = [A = E, Z, D, F, B, K, C, S] |
| Adapter:<br>*Adapter*: | B... | = [B = K, A] |
| ATEX-Ausführung:<br>*ATEX-version* | C... | = [C = _, 1] |
| Hersteller:<br>*Manufacturer:* | Innomotics GmbH | |
| Anschrift:<br>*Address:* | Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen | |

**Die alleinige Verantwortung für die Ausstellung dieser Konformitätserklärung trägt der Hersteller.**
***This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.***

**Der oben beschriebene Gegenstand der Erklärung erfüllt die einschlägigen Harmonisierungsrechtsvorschriften der Union:**
***The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:***

**2014/34/EU** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 26. Februar 2014 zur Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten für Geräte und Schutzsysteme zur bestimmungsgemäßen Verwendung in explosionsgefährdeten Bereichen; Amtsblatt der EU L96, 29/03/2014, S. 309–356
**2014/34/EU** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 February 2014 on the harmonisation of the laws of the Member States relating to equipment and protective systems intended for use in potentially explosive atmospheres; Official Journal of the EU L96, 29/03/2014, p. 309–356*

Version der Ausrüstung Gruppe II der Kategorie 2 und 3
*Version for equipment group II of category 2 and 3*
ATEX-Kennzeichnung: **II 2G / II 2D**
*ATEX-marking:* **II 3G / II 3D**
Die ausführliche Kennzeichnung ist auf dem Typenschild ausgeführt.
*The specific marking is noted on the nameplate.*

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## EU-Konformitätserklärung / *EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E43968284AE

Die Innomotics GmbH hinterlegt die gemäß 2014/34/EU Anhang VIII geforderten Unterlagen bei der benannten Stelle:
*The Innomotics GmbH deposit the documents required in accordance with 2014/34/EU Annex VIII with the notified body:*

| | |
|---|---|
| Name, Adresse<br>*Name, address* | TÜV SÜD Product Service GmbH<br>Ridlerstraße 65<br>80339 München<br>Deutschland |
| Kenn-Nummer:<br>*Approved body number:* | 0123 |
| Bescheinigung:<br>*Certificate:* | EX9A 123685 0002 |

**Weitere Angaben über die Einhaltung dieser Richtlinie(n) enthält der Anhang, der ein integraler Bestandteil dieser Konformitätserklärung ist.**
***Further information about the conformity to this Directive(s) is given in the annex, which is an integral part of this declaration of conformity.***

Unterzeichnet für und im Namen von:/ *Signed for and on behalf of:*
Innomotics GmbH

Tübingen, 04. Dezember 2023
Ort / *place*, Datum der Ausstellung / *date of issue*

Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Digital unterschrieben von Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Datum: 2023.12.06 14:39:23 +01'00'
i. V. Kaan Tasarsu
Head GM

Chen Xingjian
Digitally signed by Chen Xingjian
Date: 2023.12.05 11:19:32 +01'00'
i. V. Xingjian Chen
Head Research & Development GM

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang / *Annex*
## zur EU-Konformitätserklärung / *to EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E43968284AE

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebe mit Adapter 2KJ3...
*Product identification:* Gearbox with adapter 2KJ3...

Die Übereinstimmung des bezeichneten Produkts mit den Vorschriften der angewandten Richtlinie(n) wird nachgewiesen durch die vollständige Einhaltung folgender Normen / Vorschriften:
*The conformity of the designated product with the provisions of the applied Directive(s) is proved by full compliance with the following standards / regulations:*

**Harmonisierte Normen / *Harmonized standards*:**

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| EN ISO 80079-36..... | 2016..... | ..... | ..... |
| EN ISO 80079-37..... | 2016..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |

Sonstige technische Normen, Spezifikationen / *other technical standards, specifications*:

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |
| ..... | ..... | ..... | ..... |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung / EU-Konformitätserklärung
# *Declaration of incorporation / EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E36964102AM

| | |
|---|---|
| Produktbezeichnung:<br>*Product identification:* | Getriebemotor 2KJ3...<br>*Geared motor 2KJ3...* |
| Typ:<br>*Type:* | A... – BCD... EF... – G... – H... – I... – J... |
| Getriebe:<br>*Gearbox:* | A... = [A = E, Z, D, F, B, K, C, S] |
| Motor:<br>*Motor:* | BCD... EF... = [B = L, M; C = E, B; D = _, I, S; E = _, M; F = _, F, I, U] |
| Bremse:<br>*Brake:* | G... = [G = _, L, F] |
| Drehgeber:<br>*Encoder:* | H... = [H = _, I, S, M] |
| Funktionale Sicherheit:<br>*Functional safety:* | I... = [I = _, S] |
| ATEX-Ausführung:<br>*ATEX-Version:* | J... = [J = _, 1] |
| Hersteller:<br>*Manufacturer:* | Innomotics GmbH |
| Anschrift:<br>*Address:* | Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen |

| | |
|---|---|
| Name, Anschrift bevollmächtigte Person für technische Unterlagen:<br>*Name, address of authorised person for technical file:* | Innomotics GmbH<br>Xingjian Chen<br>Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen |

**Die alleinige Verantwortung für die Ausstellung dieser Erklärung trägt der Hersteller.**

***This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.***

**Der oben beschriebene Gegenstand der Erklärung erfüllt die einschlägigen Harmonisierungsrechtsvorschriften der Union:**

***The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:***

**Maschinenrichtlinie:**

**2006/42/EG** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 17. Mai 2006 über Maschinen und zur Änderung der Richtlinie 95/16/EG; Amtsblatt der EU L157, 9/6/2006, S. 24–86

***Machinery Directive:***

***2006/42/EC*** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 17 May 2006 on machinery, and amending Directive 95/16/EC; Official Journal of the EU L157, 9/6/2006, p. 24–86*

**EMV-Richtlinie:**

**2014/30/EU** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 26. Februar 2014 zur Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit; Amtsblatt der EU L96, 29/03/2014, S. 79–106

***EMC Directive:***

***2014/30/EU*** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 February 2014 on the harmonisation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility; Official Journal of the EU L96, 29/03/2014, p. 79–106*

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung / EU-Konformitätserklärung
## *Declaration of incorporation / EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E36964102AM

**RoHS-Richtlinie:**

**2011/65/EU** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 8. Juni 2011 zur Beschränkung der Verwendung bestimmter gefährlicher Stoffe in Elektro- und Elektronikgeräten; Amtsblatt der EU L174, 1/7/2011, S. 88–110

**Verordnung (EU) Nr. 2019/1781*:**

Verordnung der Kommission vom 1. Oktober 2019 zur Festlegung von Ökodesign-Anforderungen an Elektromotoren und Drehzahlregelungen gemäß der Richtlinie 2009/125/EG des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates; Amtsblatt der EU L272, 25/10/2019, S. 74–94

**Verordnung (EU) Nr. 327/2011:**

Verordnung der Kommission vom 30. März 2011 zur Durchführung der Richtlinie 2009/125/EG des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates im Hinblick auf die Festlegung von Anforderungen an die umweltgerechte Gestaltung von Ventilatoren, die durch Motoren mit einer elektrischen Eingangsleistung zwischen 125 W und 500 kW angetrieben werden; Amtsblatt der EU L90, 6/4/2011, S. 8–21

**Weitere Angaben über die Einhaltung dieser Richtlinie(n) enthalten Anhang MR1 und MR2, die ein integraler Bestandteil dieser Erklärung sind.**

***RoHS Directive:***

***2011/65/EU*** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 8 June 2011 on the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment; Official Journal of the EU L174, 1/7/2011, p. 88–110*

***Regulation (EU) No. 2019/1781*:***

*Commission Regulation of 1 October 2019 laying down ecodesign requirements for electric motors and variable speed drives pursuant to Directive 2009/125/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council; Official Journal of the EU L272, 25/10/2019, p. 74–94*

***Regulation (EU) No. 327/2011:***

*Commission Regulation of 30 March 2011 implementing Directive 2009/125/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council with regard to ecodesign requirements for fans driven by motors with an electric input power between 125 W and 500 kW; Official Journal of the EU L90, 6/4/2011, p. 8–21*

***Further information about the conformity to this Directive(s) is given in Annex MR1 and MR2 which are integral parts of this declaration.***

* - Die Verordnung (EU) Nr. 2019/1781 wird nur für die Produkte erklärt, welche in deren Anwendungsbereich fallen. Erfasst sind Motoren, die gemäß den Angaben auf dem jeweiligen Typenschild für den Betrieb mit einer Frequenz von 50Hz, 60Hz, 50/60Hz, mit einer Nennspannung UN von mehr als 50 V und bis zu 1000 V sowie einer Nennausgangsleistung PN von 0,12 kW bis einschließlich 1000 kW in der Betriebsart Dauerbetrieb ausgelegt sind sowie zwei, vier, sechs oder acht Pole aufweisen und nicht vollständig geschlossen unbelüftet (TENV) sind.

** - Regulation (EU) No. 2019/1781 is declared only for the products that fall within its scope. Covered are motors that, according to the information on the respective nameplate, are designed to operate at a frequency of 50Hz, 60Hz, 50/60Hz, with a nominal voltage UN of more than 50 V and up to 1000 V and a nominal output power PN of 0.12 kW up to and including 1000 kW in the continuous operation mode and have two, four, six or eight poles and are not totally enclosed non-ventilated (TENV).*

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung
# *Declaration of incorporation*

Nr. / *No.* A5E36964102AM

**Das bezeichnete Produkt ist eine unvollständige Maschine im Sinne von Art. 2 g) der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG. Sie ist nur dazu bestimmt, in andere Maschinen oder in andere unvollständige Maschinen oder Ausrüstungen eingebaut oder mit ihnen zusammengefügt zu werden.**
*The designated product is a partly completed machinery in the sense of Art 2 g) of Directive 2006/42/EC. It is only intended to be incorporated into or assembled with other machinery or other partly completed machinery or equipment.*

**Die relevanten, angewendeten und eingehaltenen grundlegenden Anforderungen nach Anhang I der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG sind im Anhang MR2 zu dieser Erklärung aufgeführt.**
*The relevant, applied and fulfilled essential requirements of Annex I of Directive 2006/42/EC are listed in Annex MR2 of this declaration.*

**Die speziellen technischen Unterlagen nach Anhang VII, B der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG wurden erstellt und werden den Behörden auf begründete Anforderung in ☒ elektronischer / ☐ Papierform zur Verfügung gestellt.**
*The relevant technical documentation according to Annex VII, B of Directive 2006/42/EC has been compiled and will be provided to the authorities upon request in ☒ electronic / ☐ paper form.*

**Die unvollständige Maschine darf erst dann in Betrieb genommen werden, wenn gegebenenfalls festgestellt wurde, dass die Maschine, in die die unvollständige Maschine eingebaut werden soll, den Bestimmungen der Maschinenrichtlinie 2006/42/EG entspricht.**
*The partly completed machinery must not be put into service until the final machinery into which it is to be incorporated has been declared in conformity with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC, where appropriate.*

Unterzeichnet für und im Namen von: / *Signed for and on behalf of:*
Innomotics GmbH

Tübingen, 18. September 2023
Ort / *place*, Datum der Ausstellung / *date of issue*

Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Digital unterschrieben von Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Datum: 2023.10.19 18:20:31 +02'00'

i. V. Kaan Tasarsu
Head GM

Chen Xingjian
Digital signiert von Chen Xingjian
DN: cn=Chen Xingjian, o=Siemens, email=xingjian.chen@siemens.com
Grund: Ich bin mit den angegebenen Teilen dieses Dokuments einverstanden
Datum: 2023.09.20 18:35:10 +02'00'

i. V. Xingjian Chen
Head Research & Development GM

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang MR1 / Annex MR1
## zur Einbauerklärung / EU-Konformitätserklärung
## *to the declaration of incorporation / EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E36964102AM

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebemotor 2KJ3...
*Product identification:* Geared motor 2KJ3...

Die Übereinstimmung des bezeichneten Produkts mit den Vorschriften der angewandten Richtlinie(n) wird nachgewiesen durch die vollständige Einhaltung folgender Normen / Vorschriften:
*The conformity of the designated product with the provisions of the applied Directive(s) is proved by full compliance with the following standards / regulations:*

**Harmonisierte Normen / *Harmonized standards*:**

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| EN ISO 12100 | 2010 | EN 60034-1* | 2010+AC:2010. |
| EN 61800-5-2** | 2017 | | |
| EN ISO 13849-1** | 2015 | | |
| EN 61800-3*** | 2004+A1:2012 | | |
| EN IEC 63000 | 2018 | | |

* - und alle relevanten Teile und Ergänzungen / and all relevant parts and supplements
** - trifft nur zu bei Typ / applies to type only: I = S, M
*** - trifft nur zu bei Typ / applies to type only: H = I, S, M; E = M

Sonstige technische Normen, Spezifikationen / *other technical standards, specifications*:

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Anhang MR2
# zur Einbauerklärung

Nr. A5E36964102AM

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebemotor 2KJ3...

Die folgenden grundlegenden Sicherheits- und Gesundheitsschutzanforderungen der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG, Anh. I, sind für die oben genannte unvollständige Maschine relevant und wurden entsprechend der Angabe in Spalte 3 erfüllt bzw. zeigen noch Restgefahren, die vom Hersteller der Gesamtmaschine zu beachten sind. Die für das Produkt nicht relevanten Risiken sind nicht aufgeführt.

| **2006/42/EG Anh. I** | **Bezeichnung** | **Anforderung erfüllt** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **j/n** | **Weitere Hinweise** |
| **1** | **Grundlegende Sicherheits- und Gesundheitsschutzanforderungen** | | |
| 1.1.2 | Grundsätze für die Integration der Sicherheit | j | |
| 1.1.3 | Materialien und Produkte | j | |
| 1.1.5 | Konstruktion der Maschine im Hinblick auf die Handhabung | j | |
| **1.3** | **Schutzmaßnahmen gegen mechanische Gefährdungen** | | |
| 1.3.1 | Risiko des Verlusts der Standsicherheit | j | |
| 1.3.2 | Bruchrisiko beim Betrieb | j | |
| 1.3.3 | Risiken durch herabfallende oder herausgeschleuderte Gegenstände | j | |
| 1.3.4 | Risiken durch Oberflächen, Kanten und Ecken | j | |
| 1.3.8.1 | Bewegliche Teile der Kraftübertragung | j | |
| **1.4** | **Anforderungen an Schutzeinrichtungen** | | |
| 1.4.1 | Allgemeine Anforderungen | j | |
| 1.4.2 | Besondere Anforderungen an trennende Schutzeinrichtungen | j | |
| 1.4.2.1 | Feststehende trennende Schutzeinrichtungen | j | |
| **1.5** | **Risiken durch sonstige Gefährdungen** | | |
| 1.5.1 | Elektrische Energieversorgung | j | Einhaltung der Schutzziele Richtlinie 2014/35/EU |
| 1.5.2 | Statische Elektrizität | j | |
| 1.5.4 | Montagefehler | j | |
| 1.5.5 | Extreme Temperaturen | j | |
| 1.5.6 | Brand | j | |
| 1.5.8 | Lärm | j | |
| 1.5.9 | Vibrationen | j | |
| 1.5.13 | Emission gefährlicher Werkstoffe und Substanzen | j | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang MR2
## zur Einbauerklärung

Nr. A5E36964102AM

| **1.6** | **Instandhaltung** | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.6.1 | Wartung der Maschine | j | |
| 1.6.2 | Zugang zu den Bedienungsständen und den Eingriffspunkten für die Instandhaltung | j | |
| **1.7** | **Informationen** | | |
| 1.7.1 | Informationen und Warnhinweise an der Maschine | j | |
| 1.7.2 | Warnung vor Restrisiken | j | |
| 1.7.3 | Kennzeichnung der Maschinen | j | |
| 1.7.4 | Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.1 | Allgemeine Grundsätze für die Abfassung der Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.2 | Inhalt der Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.3 | Verkaufsprospekte | j | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## *Annex MR2*
## *to the declaration of incorporation*

*No. A5E36964102AM*

*Product identification: Geared motor 2KJ3...*

*The following essential health and safety requirements of Directive 2006/42/EG, Annex I are relevant for the identified uncompleted machinery. According to the remarks in column 3 they have been solved respectively bear residual hazards which have to be covered by the manufacturer of the final machinery. Risks, not being relevant for the uncompleted machinery are not listed.*

| **2006/42/EC Annex I** | **Denotation** | **Requirement fulfilled** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **y/n** | **Additional remark** |
| **1** | **Essential health and safety requirements** | | |
| *1.1.2* | *Principles of safety integration* | *y* | |
| *1.1.3* | *Materials and products* | *y* | |
| *1.1.5* | *Design of machinery to facilitate its handling* | *y* | |
| **1.3** | **Protection against mechanical hazards** | | |
| *1.3.1* | *Risk of loss of stability* | *y* | |
| *1.3.2* | *Risk of break-up during operation* | *y* | |
| *1.3.3* | *Risks due to falling or ejected objects* | *y* | |
| *1.3.4* | *Risks due to surfaces, edges or angles* | *y* | |
| *1.3.8.1* | *Moving transmission parts* | *y* | |
| **1.4** | **Required characteristics of guards and protective devices** | | |
| *1.4.1* | *General requirements* | *y* | |
| *1.4.2* | *Special requirements for guards* | *y* | |
| *1.4.2.1* | *Fixed guards* | *y* | |
| **1.5** | **Risks due to other hazards** | | |
| *1.5.1* | *Electricity supply* | *y* | *Fulfillment of safety objectives of Directive 2014/35/EC* |
| *1.5.2* | *Static electricity* | *y* | |
| *1.5.4* | *Errors of fitting* | *y* | |
| *1.5.5* | *Extreme temperatures* | *y* | |
| *1.5.6* | *Fire* | *y* | |
| *1.5.8* | *Noise* | *y* | |
| *1.5.9* | *Vibrations* | *y* | |
| *1.5.13* | *Emissions of hazardous materials and substances* | *y* | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## *Annex MR2*
## *to the declaration of incorporation*

*No. A5E36964102AM*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***1.6*** | ***Maintenance*** | | |
| *1.6.1* | *Machinery maintenance* | *y* | |
| *1.6.2* | *Access to operating positions and servicing points* | *y* | |
| ***1.7*** | ***Information*** | | |
| *1.7.1* | *Information and warnings on the machinery* | *y* | |
| *1.7.2* | *Warning of residual risks* | *y* | |
| *1.7.3* | *Marking of machinery* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4* | *Instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.1* | *General principles for the drafting of instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.2* | *Contents of the instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.3* | *Sales literature* | *y* | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# EU-Konformitätserklärung / *EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E43968682AE

| | |
|---|---|
| Produktbezeichnung:<br>*Product identification:* | Getriebemotor 2KJ3...<br>*Geared motor 2KJ3...* |
| Typ:<br>*Type:* | A... – BCD... EF... – G... – H... – I... – J... |
| Getriebe:<br>*Gearbox:* | A... = [A = E, Z, D, F, B, K, C] |
| Motor:<br>*Motor:* | BCD... EF... = [B = M; C = B; D = _; E = _; F = _, F, I, U] |
| Bremse:<br>*Brake:* | G... = [G = _, L, F] |
| Drehgeber:<br>*Encoder:* | H... = [H = _, I] |
| Funktionale Sicherheit:<br>*Functional Safety:* | I... = [I = _] |
| ATEX-Ausführung:<br>*ATEX-version:* | J... = [J = _, 1] |
| Hersteller:<br>*Manufacturer:* | Innomotics GmbH |
| Anschrift:<br>*Address:* | Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen |

**Die alleinige Verantwortung für die Ausstellung dieser Konformitätserklärung trägt der Hersteller.**
***This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.***

**Der oben beschriebene Gegenstand der Erklärung erfüllt die einschlägigen Harmonisierungsrechtsvorschriften der Union:**
***The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:***

**2014/34/EU** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 26. Februar 2014 zur Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten für Geräte und Schutzsysteme zur bestimmungsgemäßen Verwendung in explosionsgefährdeten Bereichen; Amtsblatt der EU L96, 29/03/2014, S. 309–356
**2014/34/EU** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 February 2014 on the harmonisation of the laws of the Member States relating to equipment and protective systems intended for use in potentially explosive atmospheres; Official Journal of the EU L96, 29/03/2014, p. 309–356*

Version der Ausrüstung Gruppe II der Kategorie 3
*Version for equipment group II of category 3*
ATEX-Kennzeichnung: **II 3G / II 3D**
*ATEX-marking:*
Die ausführliche Kennzeichnung ist auf dem Typenschild ausgeführt.
*The specific marking is noted on the nameplate.*

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## EU-Konformitätserklärung / *EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E43968682AE

Die Innomotics GmbH hinterlegt die gemäß 2014/34/EU Anhang VIII geforderten Unterlagen bei der benannten Stelle:
*The Innomotics GmbH deposit the documents required in accordance with 2014/34/EU Annex VIII with the notified body:*

| | |
|---|---|
| Name, Adresse<br>*Name, address* | TÜV SÜD Product Service GmbH<br>Ridlerstraße 65<br>80339 München<br>Deutschland |
| Kenn-Nummer:<br>*Approved body number:* | 0123 |
| Bescheinigung:<br>*Certificate:* | EX9A 123685 0002 |

**Weitere Angaben über die Einhaltung dieser Richtlinie(n) enthält der Anhang, der ein integraler Bestandteil dieser Konformitätserklärung ist.**
***Further information about the conformity to this Directive(s) is given in the annex, which is an integral part of this declaration of conformity.***

Unterzeichnet für und im Namen von:/ *Signed for and on behalf of:*
Innomotics GmbH

Tübingen, 04. Dezember 2023
Ort / *place*, Datum der Ausstellung / *date of issue*

Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Digital unterschrieben von Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Datum: 2023.12.06 14:40:03 +01'00'
i. V. Kaan Tasarsu
Head GM

Chen Xingjian
Digitally signed by Chen Xingjian
Date: 2023.12.05 11:20:03 +01'00'
i. V. Xingjian Chen
Head Research & Development GM

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang / *Annex*
## zur EU-Konformitätserklärung / *to EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E43968682AE

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebemotor 2KJ3...
*Product identification:* Geared motor 2KJ3...

Die Übereinstimmung des bezeichneten Produkts mit den Vorschriften der angewandten Richtlinie(n) wird nachgewiesen durch die vollständige Einhaltung folgender Normen / Vorschriften:
*The conformity of the designated product with the provisions of the applied Directive(s) is proved by full compliance with the following standards / regulations:*

**Harmonisierte Normen / *Harmonized standards*:**

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| EN ISO 80079-36 | 2016 | EN 60079-31 | 2014 |
| EN ISO 80079-37 | 2016 | | |
| EN IEC 60079-0 | 2018 | | |
| EN IEC 60079-7 | 2015+A1:2018 | | |

Sonstige technische Normen, Spezifikationen / *other technical standards, specifications*:

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung / EU-Konformitätserklärung
## *Declaration of incorporation / EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E51443210AC

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Produktbezeichnung:<br>*Product identification:* | Getriebemotor T1A ...<br>*Geared motor T1A ...* | |
| Typ:<br>*Type:* | A... – B... – C...; | DEF... |
| Getriebe mit Adapter:<br>*Gearbox with adapter:* | A...<br>B... | = [A = E, Z, D, F, B, K, C, S]<br>= [B = K] |
| Motor:<br>*Motor:* | DEF... | = [D = 1; E = F, L, M, P; F = K, T, E, B, H] |
| Ex-Ausführung:<br>*Ex-Version:* | C... | = [C = _, 1] |
| Hersteller:<br>*Manufacturer:* | Innomotics GmbH | |
| Anschrift:<br>*Address:* | Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen | |

Name, Anschrift bevollmächtigte Person für technische Unterlagen:
*Name, address of authorised person for technical file:*

Innomotics GmbH
Xingjian Chen
Bahnhofstraße 40
DE-72072 Tübingen

**Die alleinige Verantwortung für die Ausstellung dieser Erklärung trägt der Hersteller.**

***This declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.***

**Der oben beschriebene Gegenstand der Erklärung erfüllt die einschlägigen Harmonisierungsrechtsvorschriften der Union:**

***The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:***

**Maschinenrichtlinie:**

**2006/42/EG** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 17. Mai 2006 über Maschinen und zur Änderung der Richtlinie 95/16/EG; Amtsblatt der EU L157, 9/6/2006, S. 24–86

***Machinery Directive:***

***2006/42/EC*** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 17 May 2006 on machinery, and amending Directive 95/16/EC; Official Journal of the EU L157, 9/6/2006, p. 24–86*

**RoHS-Richtlinie:**

**2011/65/EU** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 8. Juni 2011 zur Beschränkung der Verwendung bestimmter gefährlicher Stoffe in Elektro- und Elektronikgeräten; Amtsblatt der EU L174, 1/7/2011, S. 88–110

***RoHS Directive:***

***2011/65/EU*** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 8 June 2011 on the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment; Official Journal of the EU L174, 1/7/2011, p. 88–110*

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung / EU-Konformitätserklärung
# *Declaration of incorporation / EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.*A5E51443210AC

**Verordnung (EU) Nr. 2019/1781*:**
Verordnung der Kommission vom 1. Oktober 2019 zur Festlegung von Ökodesign-Anforderungen an Elektromotoren und Drehzahlregelungen gemäß der Richtlinie 2009/125/EG des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates; Amtsblatt der EU L272, 25/10/2019, S. 74–94

***Regulation (EU) No. 2019/1781*:***
*Commission Regulation of 1 October 2019 laying down ecodesign requirements for electric motors and variable speed drives pursuant to Directive 2009/125/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council; Official Journal of the EU L272, 25/10/2019, p. 74–94*

**Weitere Angaben über die Einhaltung dieser Richtlinie(n) enthalten Anhang MR1 und MR2, die ein integraler Bestandteil dieser Erklärung sind.**

***Further information about the conformity to this Directive(s) is given in Annex MR1 and MR2 which are integral parts of this declaration.***

* - Die Verordnung (EU) Nr. 2019/1781 wird nur für die Produkte erklärt, welche in deren Anwendungsbereich fallen. Erfasst sind Motoren, die gemäß den Angaben auf dem jeweiligen Typenschild für den Betrieb mit einer Frequenz von 50Hz, 60Hz, 50/60Hz, mit einer Nennspannung UN von mehr als 50 V und bis zu 1000 V sowie einer Nennausgangsleistung PN von 0,12 kW bis einschließlich 1000 kW in der Betriebsart Dauerbetrieb ausgelegt sind sowie zwei, vier, sechs oder acht Pole aufweisen und nicht vollständig geschlossen unbelüftet (TENV) sind.

** - Regulation (EU) No. 2019/1781 is declared only for the products that fall within its scope. Covered are motors that, according to the information on the respective nameplate, are designed to operate at a frequency of 50Hz, 60Hz, 50/60Hz, with a nominal voltage UN of more than 50 V and up to 1000 V and a nominal output power PN of 0.12 kW up to and including 1000 kW in the continuous operation mode and have two, four, six or eight poles and are not totally enclosed non-ventilated (TENV).*

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Einbauerklärung
# *Declaration of incorporation*

Nr. / *No.* A5E51443210AC

**Das bezeichnete Produkt ist eine unvollständige Maschine im Sinne von Art. 2 g) der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG. Sie ist nur dazu bestimmt, in andere Maschinen oder in andere unvollständige Maschinen oder Ausrüstungen eingebaut oder mit ihnen zusammengefügt zu werden.**
*The designated product is a partly completed machinery in the sense of Art 2 g) of Directive 2006/42/EC. It is only intended to be incorporated into or assembled with other machinery or other partly completed machinery or equipment.*

**Die relevanten, angewendeten und eingehaltenen grundlegenden Anforderungen nach Anhang I der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG sind im Anhang MR2 zu dieser Erklärung aufgeführt.**
*The relevant, applied and fulfilled essential requirements of Annex I of Directive 2006/42/EC are listed in Annex MR2 of this declaration.*

**Die speziellen technischen Unterlagen nach Anhang VII, B der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG wurden erstellt und werden den Behörden auf begründete Anforderung in ☒ elektronischer / ☐ Papierform zur Verfügung gestellt.**
*The relevant technical documentation according to Annex VII, B of Directive 2006/42/EC has been compiled and will be provided to the authorities upon request in ☒ electronic / ☐ paper form.*

**Die unvollständige Maschine darf erst dann in Betrieb genommen werden, wenn gegebenenfalls festgestellt wurde, dass die Maschine, in die die unvollständige Maschine eingebaut werden soll, den Bestimmungen der Maschinenrichtlinie 2006/42/EG entspricht.**
*The partly completed machinery must not be put into service until the final machinery into which it is to be incorporated has been declared in conformity with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC, where appropriate.*

Unterzeichnet für und im Namen von: / *Signed for and on behalf of:*
Innomotics GmbH

Tübingen, 18. September 2023
Ort / *place*, Datum der Ausstellung / *date of issue*

Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Digital unterschrieben von Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Datum: 2023.10.19 18:23:09 +02'00'
i. V. Kaan Tasarsu
Head GM

Chen Xingjian
Digital signiert von Chen Xingjian
DN: cn=Chen Xingjian, o=Siemens, email=xingjian.chen@siemens.com
Grund: Ich bin mit den angegebenen Teilen dieses Dokuments einverstanden
Datum: 2023.09.20 18:45:25 +02'00'
i. V. Xingjian Chen
Head Research & Development GM

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang MR1 / Annex MR1
## zur Einbauerklärung / EU-Konformitätserklärung
## *to the declaration of incorporation / EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E51443210AC

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebemotor T1A .....
*Product identification: Geared motor T1A .....*

Die Übereinstimmung des bezeichneten Produkts mit den Vorschriften der angewandten Richtlinie(n) wird nachgewiesen durch die vollständige Einhaltung folgender Normen / Vorschriften:
*The conformity of the designated product with the provisions of the applied Directive(s) is proved by full compliance with the following standards / regulations:*

**Harmonisierte Normen / *Harmonized standards*:**

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| EN ISO 12100 | 2010 | | |
| EN IEC 63000 | 2018 | | |
| EN 60034-1* | 2010+AC:2010 | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

* - und alle relevanten Teile und Ergänzungen / and all relevant parts and supplements

Sonstige technische Normen, Spezifikationen / *other technical standards, specifications*:

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# Anhang MR2
# zur Einbauerklärung

Nr. A5E51443210AC

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebemotor T1A .....

Die folgenden grundlegenden Sicherheits- und Gesundheitsschutzanforderungen der Richtlinie 2006/42/EG, Anh. I, sind für die oben genannte unvollständige Maschine relevant und wurden entsprechend der Angabe in Spalte 3 erfüllt bzw. zeigen noch Restgefahren, die vom Hersteller der Gesamtmaschine zu beachten sind. Die für das Produkt nicht relevanten Risiken sind nicht aufgeführt.

| **2006/42/EG Anh. I** | **Bezeichnung** | **Anforderung erfüllt** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **j/n** | **Weitere Hinweise** |
| **1** | **Grundlegende Sicherheits- und Gesundheitsschutzanforderungen** | | |
| 1.1.2 | Grundsätze für die Integration der Sicherheit | j | |
| 1.1.3 | Materialien und Produkte | j | |
| 1.1.5 | Konstruktion der Maschine im Hinblick auf die Handhabung | j | |
| **1.3** | **Schutzmaßnahmen gegen mechanische Gefährdungen** | | |
| 1.3.1 | Risiko des Verlusts der Standsicherheit | j | |
| 1.3.2 | Bruchrisiko beim Betrieb | j | |
| 1.3.3 | Risiken durch herabfallende oder herausgeschleuderte Gegenstände | j | |
| 1.3.4 | Risiken durch Oberflächen, Kanten und Ecken | j | |
| 1.3.7 | Risiken durch bewegliche Teile | j | |
| 1.3.8.1 | Bewegliche Teile der Kraftübertragung | j | |
| **1.5** | **Risiken durch sonstige Gefährdungen** | | |
| 1.5.1 | Elektrische Energieversorgung | j | Einhaltung der Schutzziele Richtlinie 2014/35/EU |
| 1.5.2 | Statische Elektrizität | j | |
| 1.5.4 | Montagefehler | j | |
| 1.5.5 | Extreme Temperaturen | j | |
| 1.5.6 | Brand | j | |
| 1.5.7 | Explosion | j | |
| 1.5.8 | Lärm | j | |
| 1.5.9 | Vibrationen | j | |
| 1.5.13 | Emission gefährlicher Werkstoffe und Substanzen | j | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang MR2
## zur Einbauerklärung

Nr. A5E51443210AC

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **1.6** | **Instandhaltung** | | |
| 1.6.1 | Wartung der Maschine | j | Siehe Montage- / Betriebsanleitung |
| **1.7** | **Informationen** | | |
| 1.7.1 | Informationen und Warnhinweise an der Maschine | j | Siehe Montage- / Betriebsanleitung |
| 1.7.2 | Warnung vor Restrisiken | j | Siehe Montage- / Betriebsanleitung |
| 1.7.3 | Kennzeichnung der Maschinen | j | |
| 1.7.4 | Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.1 | Allgemeine Grundsätze für die Abfassung der Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.2 | Inhalt der Betriebsanleitung | j | |
| 1.7.4.3 | Verkaufsprospekte | j | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## *Annex MR2*
## *to the declaration of incorporation*

*No. A5E51443210AC*

*Product identification: Geared motor T1A .....*

*The following essential health and safety requirements of Directive 2006/42/EG, Annex I are relevant for the identified uncompleted machinery. According to the remarks in column 3 they have been solved respectively bear residual hazards which have to be covered by the manufacturer of the final machinery. Risks, not being relevant for the uncompleted machinery are not listed.*

| **2006/42/EC Annex I** | **Denotation** | **Requirement fulfilled** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | **y/n** | **Additional remark** |
| **1** | **Essential health and safety requirements** | | |
| *1.1.2* | *Principles of safety integration* | *y* | |
| *1.1.3* | *Materials and products* | *y* | |
| *1.1.5* | *Design of machinery to facilitate its handling* | *y* | |
| **1.3** | **Protection against mechanical hazards** | | |
| *1.3.1* | *Risk of loss of stability* | *y* | |
| *1.3.2* | *Risk of break-up during operation* | *y* | |
| *1.3.3* | *Risks due to falling or ejected objects* | *y* | |
| *1.3.4* | *Risks due to surfaces, edges or angles* | *y* | |
| *1.3.7* | *Risks related to moving parts* | *y* | |
| *1.3.8.1* | *Moving transmission parts* | *y* | |
| **1.5** | **Risks due to other hazards** | | |
| *1.5.1* | *Electricity supply* | *y* | *Fulfillment of safety objectives of Directive 2014/35/EC* |
| *1.5.2* | *Static electricity* | *y* | |
| *1.5.4* | *Errors of fitting* | *y* | |
| *1.5.5* | *Extreme temperatures* | *y* | |
| *1.5.6* | *Fire* | *y* | |
| *1.5.7* | *Explosion* | *y* | |
| *1.5.8* | *Noise* | *y* | |
| *1.5.9* | *Vibrations* | *y* | |
| *1.5.13* | *Emissions of hazardous materials and substances* | *y* | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## *Annex MR2*
## *to the declaration of incorporation*

*No. A5E51443210AC*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***1.6*** | ***Maintenance*** | | |
| *1.6.1* | *Machinery maintenance* | *y* | *See assembly- / maintenance instructions* |
| ***1.7*** | ***Information*** | | |
| *1.7.1* | *Information and warnings on the machinery* | *y* | *See assembly- / maintenance instructions* |
| *1.7.2* | *Warning of residual risks* | *y* | *See assembly- / maintenance instructions* |
| *1.7.3* | *Marking of machinery* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4* | *Instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.1* | *General principles for the drafting of instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.2* | *Contents of the instructions* | *y* | |
| *1.7.4.3* | *Sales literature* | *y* | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

# EU-Konformitätserklärung / *EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E51443228AC

| | |
|---|---|
| Produktbezeichnung:<br>*Product identification:* | Getriebemotor T1A...<br>*Geared motor T1A...* |
| Typ:<br>*Type::* | A... – B... – C...; DEF... |
| Getriebe mit Adapter:<br>*Gearbox with adapter:*<br>Motor:<br>*Motor:*<br>ATEX-Ausführung:<br>*ATEX-version:* | A... = [A = E, Z, D, F, B, K, C, S]<br>B... = [B = K]<br>DEF... = [D = 1; E = M, P; F = B, H]<br><br>C... = [C = _, 1] |
| Hersteller:<br>*Manufacturer:*<br>Anschrift:<br>*Address:* | Innomotics GmbH<br><br>Bahnhofstraße 40<br>DE-72072 Tübingen |

**Die alleinige Verantwortung für die Ausstellung dieser Konformitätserklärung trägt der Hersteller.**
***This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer.***

**Der oben beschriebene Gegenstand der Erklärung erfüllt die einschlägigen Harmonisierungsrechtsvorschriften der Union:**
***The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonisation legislation:***

**2014/34/EU** Richtlinie des Europäischen Parlaments und des Rates vom 26. Februar 2014 zur Harmonisierung der Rechtsvorschriften der Mitgliedstaaten für Geräte und Schutzsysteme zur bestimmungsgemäßen Verwendung in explosionsgefährdeten Bereichen; Amtsblatt der EU L96, 29/03/2014, S. 309–356
**2014/34/EU** *Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council of 26 February 2014 on the harmonisation of the laws of the Member States relating to equipment and protective systems intended for use in potentially explosive atmospheres; Official Journal of the EU L96, 29/03/2014, p. 309–356*

Version der Ausrüstung Gruppe II der Kategorie 2 und 3
*Version for equipment group II of category 2 and 3*
ATEX Kennzeichnung: **II 2G / II 2D**
*ATEX marking*: **II 3G / II 3D**

Die ausführliche Kennzeichnung ist auf dem Typenschild ausgeführt.
*The specific marking is noted on the nameplate.*

Innomotics GmbH hinterlegt die gemäß 2014/34/EU Anhang VIII geforderten Unterlagen bei der benannten Stelle:
*Innomotics GmbH deposit the documents required in accordance with 2014/34/EU Annex VIII with the notified body:*

| | |
|---|---|
| Name, Adresse<br>*Name, address* | TÜV SÜD Product Service GmbH<br>Ridlerstraße 65<br>80339 München<br>Deutschland |
| Kenn-Nummer:<br>*Approved body number:* | 0123 |
| Bescheinigung:<br>*Certificate:* | EX9A 123685 0002 |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## EU-Konformitätserklärung / *EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E51443228AC

**Weitere Angaben über die Einhaltung dieser Richtlinie(n) enthält der Anhang, der ein integraler Bestandteil dieser Konformitätserklärung ist.**

***Further information about the conformity to this Directive(s) is given in the annex, which is an integral part of this declaration of conformity.***

Unterzeichnet für und im Namen von:/ *Signed for and on behalf of:*
Innomotics GmbH

Tübingen, 04. Dezember 2023
Ort / *place*, Datum der Ausstellung / *date of issue*

Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Digital unterschrieben von Tasarsu Kaan Takuma
Datum: 2023.12.06 14:40:38 +01'00'

i. V. Kaan Tasarsu
Head GM

Chen Xingjian
Digitally signed by Chen Xingjian
Date: 2023.12.05 11:20:23 +01'00'

i. V. Xingjian Chen
Head Research & Development GM

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## Anhang / *Annex*
## zur EU-Konformitätserklärung / *to EU-declaration of conformity*

Nr. / *No.* A5E51443228AC

Produktbezeichnung: Getriebemotor T1A...
*Product identification: Geared motor T1A...*

Die Übereinstimmung des bezeichneten Produkts mit den Vorschriften der angewandten Richtlinie(n) wird nachgewiesen durch die vollständige Einhaltung folgender Normen / Vorschriften:
*The conformity of the designated product with the provisions of the applied Directive(s) is proved by full compliance with the following standards / regulations:*

**Harmonisierte Normen / *Harmonized standards*:**

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| EN ISO 80079-36 | 2016 | EN 60079-31 | 2014 |
| EN ISO 80079-37 | 2016 | | |
| EN IEC 60079-0 | 2018 | | |
| EN IEC 60079-7 | 2015+A1:2018. | | |

Sonstige technische Normen, Spezifikationen: / *Other technical standards, specifications*:

| Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* | Referenznummer<br>*Reference number* | Ausgabedatum<br>*Date of issue* |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Diese Erklärung bescheinigt die Übereinstimmung mit den genannten Richtlinien, ist jedoch keine Beschaffenheits- oder Haltbarkeitsgarantie.
Die Sicherheitshinweise der mitgelieferten Produktdokumentation sind zu beachten.

*This declaration is an attestation of conformity with the indicated Directive(s) but does not imply any guarantee of quality or durability.*
*The safety instructions of the accompanying product documentation shall be observed.*

Copyright (©) Innomotics GmbH; 2023; All rights reserved

## More information

SIMOGEAR on the Internet:
**www.siemens.com/simogear**

Industry Online Support (Service and Support):
**www.siemens.com/online-support**

IndustryMall:
**www.siemens.com/industrymall**